This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 00605706 5

SIR JOHN FROISSART'S

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,

AND THE

ADJOINING COUNTRIES,

FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.
TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

BY THOMAS JOHNES.

ASTOR LIBRARY
NEW-YORK

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,
He moste reherse, as neighe as ever he can;
Everich worde, if it be in his charge,
All speke he never so rudely and so large;
Or elles he moste tellen his tale untrewe,
Or feinen thinges, or finden wordes newe.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

THE SECOND EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

VOL. X.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.
1806.

THE

CONTENTS

OF

THE TENTH VOLUME.

CHAP. I. Sir John de Chatel-Morant brings from England the Truces for three Years, sealed by King Richard and his Allies. —Lewis of Anjou, King of Sicily, is betrothed and married to a Daughter of the King of Arragon - Page 1.

II. The King of France is desirous of visiting the distant Parts of his Kingdom. —At the Request of the Lord de Coucy, he orders the Duke of Ireland out of France - - - 6

III. King Charles of France visits his Uncle the Duke of Burgundy, and Pope Clement at Avignon - - 11

IV. The King of France sends the Dukes of Berry and Burgundy to their Homes, to their great Dissatisfaction, and continues his Journey from Avignon to Languedoc - - - 16

V. During the Time King Charles of France is at Montpellier, three of his Chamberlains undertake to hold a Tournament near to Calais, against all Comers 20

CHAP. VI. During the King of France's Residence at Beziers, Accusations are made against Bethisac, Treasurer to the Duke of Berry.—Thinking to be sent to the Pope and escape Punishment, he confesses himself a Heretic and Sodomite, but is transferred over, by the Official at Beziers, to the secular Power, and burnt - - - 37

VII. When the King of France is at Toulouse, he summons the Count de Foix, who, on his Arrival, pays him Homage for his County of Foix 50

VIII. The King of France and his Brother, the Duke of Touraine, wager which shall arrive the soonest at Paris, from Montpellier, each attended by only one Knight - - 60

IX. The Death of Pope Urban at Rome, called the Anti Pope.—Pope Clement writes to the King of France, his Uncles, and the University of Paris on the Occasion.—The Election of Pope Boniface by the Roman Cardinals - - 64

X. The Surrender of the strong Castle of Ventadour in Limousin, that had been the chief Residence of Geoffry Tetenoir - - - 69

XI. Three French Knights hold a Tournament at Saint Inglevere, near Calais, and defend the Lists, for Thirty Days, against all Comers, from England and elsewhere - - 88

CHAP.

CHAP. XII. The Duke of Bourbon is appointed Chief of an Expedition to Africa, that is undertaken by several Knights of France and England at the Solicitation of the Genoese - 126

XIII. Aymerigot Marcel, Captain of the Pillaging Companies, having fortified La Roche de Vandais, on the Borders of Limousin and Auvergne, is besieged by the Viscount de Maux, by Command of the King of France 134

XIV. Aymerigot Marcel endeavours, but in vain, to raise the Siege of La Roche de Vandais, by Letters and Messages to the King of England, the Duke of Lancaster, the Viscount de Meaux, and even to the Duke of Berry - - - 153

XV. Aymerigot Marcel having left La Roche de Vandais, to seek succour from other Pillagers, his Lieutenant, Guyot du Sel, is surprised by an Ambuscade, and the Fort surrenders on Capitulation - - 171

XVI. The Messengers from England, hearing of the surrender of La Roche de Vandais, take Leave of the Duke of Berry.—Aymerigot retires to the House of a Relation, called Tournemine, who betrays him to the King of France.—He is carried to Paris, and there beheaded and his Body quartered - - 173

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII. The Christian Lords weigh Anchor, and leave the Island of Comino, in order to lay siege to the Town of Africa.—The Manner in which they conduct themselves - 186

XVIII. The Conduct of the Saracens during the Siege of the Town of Africa. —They send to demand from the French the Cause of their making War against them - - 200

XIX. Some Miracles are shewn to the Saracens, as they attempt to attack the Camp of the Christians. —Several Skirmishes during the Siege.—The Climate becomes unwholesome, and other Accidents befal the Besiegers - 206

XX. A Challenge is sent by the Saracens to offer combat of Ten against Ten Christians.—The Saracens fail in their Engagement.—The Town of Africa is stormed, but unsuccessfully, and with the Loss of many worthy Men - 212

XXI. A grand Tournament is holden at London.—The King of England gives splendid Entertainments during the Siege of the Town of Africa by the Christians.—The Count D'Ostrevant receives the Order of the Garter, which displeases the King of France - 222

CHAP. XXII. The Siege of Africa is raised.—The Cause of it.—The Knights and Squires return to their own countries - - - 236

CHAP. XXIII. King Charles of France proposes to march to Italy, to form an Union of the Church by Force, and thence to Barbary.—Ambassadors from England offer Proposals for a Peace between him and King Richard.—The Death of John King of Castille.—He is succeeded by his son Henry, who, is crowned King, though but Nine Years of age 245

XXIV. Of the Expedition of Count John d'Armagnac into Lombardy.—His Death at the Siege of Alexandria - - - 257

XXV. The King of England is anxious to make a Peace with France.—The Duke of Gloucester throws Obstacles in the way.—Sir Peter de Craon, formerly the Favourite of King Charles and his Brother the Duke of Touraine, incurs their Hatred, and takes Refuge with the Duke of Brittany - 278

XXVI. The Death of the young Count Louis de Chastillon, Son to Count Guy de Blois.—The sudden Death of Gaston Count de Foix - - - 288

XXVII. Sir Evan de Foix, Bastard-Son to the late Count, intending to carry away privately the Treasure of his Father, is discovered by the Townsmen of Orthes, who, however, promise every Assistance to him and to his Brother that is not incompatible with the true Heir to the Count de Foix, the Viscount de Chastelbon - 292

CHAP. XXVIII. The Corpse of the Count de Foix is brought from Rion to Orthes. —The King of France sends the Bishop of Noyon and the Lord de la Riviere into the County of Foix, to make Arrangements, according to the Decree of the Council - 299

XXIX. The Viscount de Chastel-Bon, Heir to the Count de Foix, attends his Funeral at Orthes.—He is advised to send to the before-named Commissioners from France, to demand Possession of the Succession which had fallen to him by the Death of the Count de Foix: He afterwards sends, to the same Purport, to the King of France 302

XXX. The King of France and the Duke of Brittany meet at Tours, to settle their Differences.—Ambassadors from England come thither also to negociate a Peace - - 315

XXXI. Sir Roger d'Espaign and Sir Espaign du Lyon, Ambassadors from the Viscount de Chastelbon, practise so successfully with the Court of France, that he is declared Heir and Successor to the Count de Foix by Letters Patent from the King of France - - 323

CHAP

CHAP. XXXII. During the residence of the King of France and Duke of Brittany at Tours, their Differences are partly accommodated by Means of the Marriages of the Duke's Son with a Princess of France, and a Son of John of Brittany, Son to the late Lord Charles de Blois, with a Daughter of the Duke of Brittany - 329

XXXIII. The Count de Blois and Mary of Namur, his Countess, sell to the Duke of Touraine the County of Blois with other Lands.—The Viscount de Chastelbon takes Possession of the Inheritance of the late Count de Foix - - - 335

XXXIV. A grand Assembly at Amiens, of the King and Lords of France and England, to treat of a Peace between the two Kingdoms - - - 344

XXXV. The French and English Lords, not being able to agree on the Terms of Peace, prolong the Truce one Year.—The English, on their Return, are accompanied by the Lord de Chasteau-Morant, to bring back the King of England's final Answer - - - 352

XXXVI. The first Illness of King Charles.—Count Bernard d'Armagnac does Homage to the King.—The Lord de Chastelmorant returns from England with an Answer respecting Peace - 357

CHAP. XXXVII. Sir Peter de Craon, through Malevolence, waylays Sir Oliver de Clisson, beats and severely wounds him. — The King and Council are greatly angered thereat - - 360

XXXVIII. The King of France sends his own Physicians and Surgeons to visit the Constable during the Night.—He orders the Provost of Paris to pursue Sir Peter de Craon, who had fled for Refuge to the Duke of Brittany.—Some of his Men, having remained at Paris, are executed. - 370

THE

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.

CHAP. I.

SIR JOHN DE CHATEL-MORANT BRINGS FROM ENGLAND THE TRUCES FOR THREE YEARS, SEALED BY KING RICHARD AND HIS ALLIES. —LEWIS OF ANJOU, KING OF SICILY, IS BETROTHED AND MARRIED TO A DAUGHTER OF THE KING OF ARRAGON.

AFTER this grand feſtival, and when the lords and ladies, who had aſſiſted at it, were returned to their caſtles, the lord de Châtel-morant, whom the lord de Saint-Pol had left in England, arrived at Paris with the truces, ſigned by the king of England and his allies. He delivered to the king and his miniſters the charter of the truce that was to laſt for three years, and read aloud its contents in the preſence of the lord de Coucy, who was lieutenant for the king, to guard and defend all the country, from the Dordogne to the ſea, including Auvergne and Limouſin. All who

ſhould infringe, or any way break this treaty, or cauſe it to be broken, whatever were his rank, would be conſidered as a traitor, and incur puniſhment of death. The lord de Coucy had alſo a copy delivered to him, to ſhew, if neceſſary, to thoſe garriſons in Ventadour, Chaluçet, Orbeſi*, Donzach†, who were carrying on war under name of the Engliſh, that they might not have any cauſe of excuſe, and incur the penalty, ſhould they continue their warfare.

The lord Lewis de Sancerre, marſhal of France, had it in like manner read to him, and a copy given to him. This was very neceſſary; for he was lieutenant over all the country of Languedoc, from the river Rhône and Avignon, within which are many valuable eſtates and lordſhips, as far as the Dordogne. His government contained the ſeneſchalſhips of Beaucaire, Carcaſſone, Toulouſe, Rouergue, Agen, Quercy, Bigorre, Perigord and Limoges, where were many forts and caſtles that minded not the truce, but continued to carry on the war, ſuch as Châtel-cuillier, and the ſtrong caſtle of Lourdes, on the frontiers of Bearn, which kept the neighbourhood under continual alarms.

About this time, there was a treaty of marriage on foot, between the lord Lewis d'Anjou, ſon to the late duke, who ſtiled himſelf king of Naples, Sicily, Jeruſalem, and count of Provence, and the daughter of the King of Arragon. The queen

* Orbeſi,—Orbeſſan, a village in Armagnac.

† Donzach,—a village in Armagnac.

of

of Naples went to viſit the pope at Avignon, carrying with her the young lord Lewis, and there met the lord de Coucy, who was much rejoiced at her arrival. The queen was handſomely received by the pope and cardinals; of which ſhe was indeed deſerving, for ſhe was an active buſtling lady, and one who did not ſleep over her intereſts. She entreated the lord de Coucy to eſcort her ſon to Arragon, and to remain with him until he were married. He replied,—'Certainly, madam, there is not a voyage that, for ſeven years paſt, I would more willingly have undertaken than to Sicily and Naples, more particularly in company with my lord your ſon, if I have the conſent of our lord and king.' 'Many thanks, lord de Coucy,' ſaid the queen: 'you ſhew us your good inclinations; but, for the preſent, it will be ſufficient if you will accompany our ſon to Arragon. The queen of Arragon will be very happy to ſee you, for your daughter is married to her brother, ſir Henry de Bar.'

The lord de Coucy cheerfully agreed to undertake this journey; and the king of Sicily, having made his preparations, took leave of pope Clement, and of his mother, with many tears. Their hearts were wrung, not indeed without cauſe, at this ſeparation, for he was going to a far country, and it was uncertain when they ſhould meet again. It had been ſettled, that inſtantly after the marriage had taken place, the young king and queen were to embark at Barcelona, and ſail as expedi-

tiouſly as they could for Naples or any other part of that country.

The young king of Sicily was handſomely attended, and, having paſſed through Montpellier and Beziers, came to Narbonne, where he and his company were honourably received by the viſcount. Having refreſhed their horſes for one day, they continued their route towards Perpignan, the firſt town of Arragon. News of his arrival had reached the court of Arragon, and the queen had ſent proper perſons to receive him and his attendants, and ſhew them all reſpect, ſo that, wherever they paſſed, they were well entertained, and all their expenſes paid. The viſcount de Roquebertin and ſir Raymond de Baighes were their conductors.

They continued their journey until they arrived at Barcelona, where the king, queen and princeſs were expecting them. The young king Lewis was very kindly received; and the queen was particularly pleaſed on ſeeing the lord de Coucy, and thanked her future ſon-in-law for having brought him with him, adding, that every thing would fare the better for it.

The marriage was performed and conſummated between theſe two perſons; but, as winter was approaching, the ſea-voyage was deferred, becauſe at ſuch a time the ſea is ſtormy and dangerous. They ſaid they would collect all the purveyances during the winter, and embark in the beginning of the enſuing month of March. The lord de Coucy was perfectly well received by the king

and

and queen of Arragon; but, having had letters from the king of France, ordering him to return, he took his leave of them, and of the young king and the queen of Sicily, as well as of the lords of Arragon, and ſet out for France. If he had had time, he would have returned by Avignon; but he ſent his excuſes to the pope and queen of Naples, and went ſtraight to Auvergne.

At the time of this marriage of the king of Sicily with the princeſs of Arragon, many treaties were concluded between him and the Arragonians, who were to aſſiſt him with men and galleys in the recovery of his kingdom. They were to convey him to Naples, with two hundred ſpears, one thouſand croſs-bows, and the ſame number of infantry armed with brigandines, who were to ſerve him at their own charges, during the war, until he ſhould have full poſſeſſion of Naples, Sicily and its dependancies, la Puglia, Calabria and the city of Gaieta, the reſidence of Margaret de Durazzo, who claimed all theſe territories as her own.

When the ſweet month of March was arrived, and the winds were become calm, the waters ſmooth, and the trees once more clothed in green, and all purveyances ready and embarked, as well as the men at arms who were to be of this expedition, the young couple took leave of the king and queen of Arragon. The queen with tears ſaw them depart, and recommended them to the particular care of the count de Roddes, a very valiant knight, and ſir Raymond de Baighes. They

promiſed ſpecial obedience to the queen's wiſhes, although the count d'Orghel and the count de la Lune were their ſuperiors and had the command of the convoy.

There were on board theſe galleys fifteen hundred ſpears, two thouſand croſs-bows, and two thouſand luſty varlets armed with pikes and ſhields. They were in ſuch force the better to reſiſt their enemies, and any adventurers they might encounter at ſea; for the voyage from Barcelona to Naples is long, and Margaret de Durazzo, their adverſary, might have had intelligence of their motions, and ſtationed a fleet accordingly: they therefore were deſirous of having ſtrength enough to oppoſe any ſhe could bring againſt them.

We will now leave the affairs of Sicily, and return to thoſe of France, which is our principal object, and to ſeveral other events.

CHAP. II.

THE KING OF FRANCE IS DESIROUS OF VISITING THE DISTANT PARTS OF HIS KINGDOM.—AT THE REQUEST OF THE LORD DE COUCY, HE ORDERS THE DUKE OF IRELAND OUT OF FRANCE.

WHEN the king of France ſaw that his kingdom was now at peace, in conſequence of the truce with England, he had a great deſire to viſit

viſit the more diſtant parts of it, and particularly Languedoc. The lord de la Riviere and ſir John le Mercier, at that time his moſt intimate adviſers, urged him to viſit the pope and cardinals at Avignon, who were deſirous of that honour, and thence to go to Toulouſe, ſaying that a king, when young, ſhould viſit his realm, to acquaint himſelf with its inhabitants and inquire how they have been governed, as it would redound to his profit and glory, and cauſe himſelf to be more beloved by his ſubjects.

The king was ſo inclined, and willingly attended to all matters of government. The lord de la Riviere, who was but lately returned from thoſe parts, told him that his ſubjects in the ſeneſchalſhips of Toulouſe, Carcaſſone and Beaucaire, were impatient to ſee him; for that the duke of Berry, during his government of that country, had ſorely oppreſſed them with taxes and other impoſitions, through the means of one of his familiars, called Bethiſac *, who had pity on none,

* 'John Bethiſac was one of the chief adviſers of the duke of Berry, and was accuſed with Tiétac and de Bar, two other domeſtics of this prince, of having raiſed enormous levies from the Languedocians, over whom the duke was governor, and under his name of having committed great plunder and much violence, and of having put large ſums into their own pockets. This report gave riſe to the following paſquinade, that is even current in our times:

'Tiétac, de Bar, et Bethiſac,
Ont mis l'argent du roi au ſac.'

none, and that they were quite ruined. On this account, therefore, it would be proper for him to go thither, and he could then ſummon the count de Foix, whom he was ſo anxious to ſee, to meet him at Toulouſe.

The king, having aſſented to this propoſal, ordered immenſe purveyances to be provided for him on the road he was to travel. He ſignified to his uncle and aunt, the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy, that, as he paſſed through their lands, he ſhould be glad to ſee their children, his couſins; and that he would bring with him his brother of Touraine, and his uncle of Bourbon.

This news of the king's intended viſit to Burgundy was highly pleaſing to the duke and ducheſs. They had proclaimed a feſtival and tournament to be holden at Dijon, and ſent invitations to the knights and ſquires of Savoy and the adjoining countries, who made their preparations accordingly. During the time all theſe different arrangements were making for the king's journey to Avig-

---

* Bethiſac ſuffered the puniſhment of his crimes; but the duke of Berry having claimed him as his domeſtic, thoſe who ſworn his ruin perſuaded him to own he had erred in ſeveral articles of faith, which would cauſe him to be transferred to the biſhop, and the duke could the eaſier ſave him. Crime often ſtupifies. Bethiſac was ſimple enough to fall into their trap. The biſhop of Beziers had him tried, and given over to the ſecular arm as an heretic and ſodomite. This wretch was burnt alive, which was, ſays Mézeray, a feu de joie for the people whom he had horribly tormented. Hiſtory does not ſay whence he ſprung, but probably he was of low origin, who wanted to riſe too rapidly.'—*Dictionnaire Hiſtorique.*

non and Languedoc, other events happened in France.

You have heard how the duke of Ireland, formerly earl of Oxford, had been driven out and baniſhed England, for his demerits, by the power of the uncles of king Richard, but eſpecially by the duke of Gloceſter, who had been more bitter againſt him than all the reſt; and how he had fled to Holland, and had remained a ſhort time at Dordrecht, when he was forced thence by duke Albert, the lord of Dordrecht and Holland, who refuſed him a reſidence on his lands, from a wiſh not to act contrary to the will of his couſins in England, notwithſtanding king Richard had written to him in his favour.

The duke of Ireland, being forced to depart, went to Utrecht, where he reſided ſome time, and might have ſtaid there as long as he pleaſed; for Utrecht is a free town to receive whoever liſts, if they pay for what they want, and this duke had a ſufficiency of money; for he had received, of the conſtable, ſixty thouſand francs, as the balance of the ranſom of John of Brittany. You have alſo heard how the king of France had ſent him paſſports to come to France, having invited him thither, and where he had remained for more than a year, the king ſhewing him very great attention, becauſe he was a foreigner.

There is nothing but what one is tired of. True it is, that, notwithſtanding this duke was ſo well received by the king, the lord de Coucy mortally hated him, and not without reaſon; for although, in other affairs, he ſhewed great good ſenſe, ho-

nour

nour and liberality, he had behaved infamouſly to the daughter of the lord de Coucy, whom he had married, and without any reaſons, except temptation and deceit, he had divorced and taken another wife, who was from Bohemia, and one of the ladies attached to the queen of England. The king and queen had improperly and ſinfully conſented to this; and pope Urban had, at their entreaties, ſent from Rome a diſpenſation for the marriage. This new marriage not only wounded the reputation of the duke of Ireland, but was the principal cauſe of his ruin.

The lord de Coucy was one of the king of France's council, and very deſervedly in favour, from the ſervices he had done, and was willing to do his country: he therefore, with the aſſiſtance of his friends, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, the lord de la Riviere and ſir John le Mercier, prevailed on the king to diſmiſs the duke of Ireland. Orders were, in conſequence, ſent him from the king, to chooſe any other reſidence but France, and that he ſhould be ſafely conducted out of that kingdom.

The duke of Ireland perceived they were tired of him, and that he ran daily riſks, from the lord de Coucy and from his relations. He therefore thought it would be beſt for him to leave France as ſoon as poſſible, and retire to Brabant; and begged of the king to write to the ducheſs of Brabant, that he might live peaceably in her country. The king cheerfully complied with his requeſt, and wrote to his aunt, the ducheſs, who at his deſire aſſented to it.

The

The duke of Ireland was eſcorted by the king of France's officers as far as Louvain, where he fixed his reſidence: he went, indeed, at times, to a caſtle near Louvain, which he had borrowed from a knight of Brabant. The archbiſhop of York, who was of the houſe of Neville, lived with the duke, as he had been baniſhed England for the ſame cauſe as himſelf. The archbiſhop's family were very powerful in Northumberland, from their property and connections. Theſe two lords, as I have heard, remained at Louvain as long as they lived, for they could never obtain favour with the uncles of the king of England, and there died. I never heard more of them.

CHAP. III.

KING CHARLES OF FRANCE VISITS HIS UNCLE THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY, AND POPE CLEMENT AT AVIGNON.

ABOUT Michaelmas 1399, the king of France ſet out from the caſtle of Beauté, near Paris, where he left the queen, and took the road to Troyes in Champagne in his way to Burgundy. He was accompanied by his uncle the duke of Bourbon, the duke of Touraine, the lord de Coucy and many other knights, and continued his journey until he arrived at Dijon.

The

The duke of Burgundy, and his ſon the count de Nevers, had gone as far as Châtillon ſur Seine to meet the king. On his arrival at Dijon, he was received with every reſpect and affection by the ducheſs of Burgundy, the counteſs of Nevers, and all who had come thither to do him honour. From love to the king, many ladies and damſels, whoſe company he preferred, were come to Dijon, ſuch as the lady of Sully, the ladies of Vergy and Pagny, and ſeveral others, handſome and gay, and richly dreſſed.

The dancings and carrollings inſtantly began: the ladies exerted their talents in ſinging and dancing to amuſe the king, the duke of Bourbon, the duke of Touraine and the lord de Coucy. On the Monday, Tueſday and Wedneſday, were tilts gallantly performed, and prizes given to the moſt deſerving. The king remained eight whole days at Dijon, thus amuſing himſelf: on the tenth, I believe he took leave of the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy and their family. It was the intention of the duke of Burgundy inſtantly to follow the king, and remain with him; and, on this being ſettled, he departed from Dijon, having biddeh adieu to the ladies and damſels.

The king continued his journey until he came to Villeneuve, near Avignon, where his palace had been prepared. The cardinals of Amiens*,

* John de la Grange was miniſter of ſtate under Charles V. who procured him the purple. He was covetous and ambitious.

Aiſgrenel,

Aiſgrenel *, Saint Marcel †, Neufchaſtel ‡, and upwards of thirteen others, went out to meet the king, as they were rejoiced at his arrival. The duke of Berry was already at Avignon, and lodged in the palace of the pope; but he came to Villeneuve to meet his nephew, and fixed his quarters at the hôtel of Arras, called Amontais, on the road to Montpellier.

The duke of Burgundy arrived the day after the king, at Villeneuve, down the Rhône, for at Lyons he had embarked on board a large barge.

Theſe three dukes, being aſſembled, determined to accompany the king in his viſit to the pope in his palace. Having had every thing prepared accordingly, the king of France, attended by his brother, his three uncles, and twelve cardinals, croſſed the Rhône at nine o'clock, and went to the palace, where pope Clement was waiting for him in full conſiſtory, ſeated in his robes, on his papal chair.

When the king came into his preſence, he bowed; and, when near to him, the pope roſe up, and the king kiſſed his hands and mouth. The pope then ſeated himſelf, and made the king ſit by him on a handſome ſeat that had been prepared for the occaſion. The four dukes, after having kiſſed the pope's hands and mouth, ſeated

---

* Not in the liſt of cardinals.

† Q. if not Marcellin.

‡ John de Neufchaſtel,—created cardinal by pope Clement. For further particulars, ſee Moreri, &c.

themſelves

themſelves alſo among the cardinals. When theſe ceremonies were over, it was dinner-time: they therefore went into the other apartments of the pope and the hall, where the tables were ſpread. When they had waſhed, the pope took his place at a table alone, in much ſtate. The king was placed at another table below that of the pope, and alone alſo. The cardinals and dukes ſeated themſelves according to their rank.

The dinner was ſplendid, plentiful and long. When over, wine and ſpices were brought; and the king then retired to an apartment that had been prepared for him in the palace, as did the dukes to theirs, for all of them had chambers, properly ornamented, provided for them, and which they inhabited as long as they ſtaid at Avignon.

On the fifth day after the arrival of the king of France at Avignon, the young count de Savoye, couſin to the king, and nephew to the duke of Bourbon, came thither. The king was pleaſed at his coming, for he had ſeen him as he paſſed through Lyons, and had invited him to Avignon. The king of France, the duke of Touraine and the count de Savoye, being young and giddy, neither could nor would refrain from dancing, carolling and amuſing themſelves with the ladies and damſels of Avignon, though they were in the pope's palace and among the cardinals; and the count of Geneva, brother to the pope, was their maſter of the revels. The king made ſuch mag-

nificent

nificent preſents to the ladies, that they all praiſed his liberality.

The pope and cardinals were much rejoiced at this viſit of the king of France, as indeed they had good reaſon to be; for without his ſupport they would have been in little eſtimation. There were no kings in Chriſtendom who paid him obedience but ſuch as were allied to France. The kings of Caſtille and Scotland acknowledged him for pope, as did the king of Arragon, through the interceſſion of the queen Jolande de Bar, who was couſin german to the king of France, otherwiſe he would have remained neuter like his father. You may therefore ſuppoſe the pope and his cardinals were happy in receiving the king of France; for all they had to depend on was obtained through his favour.

The king of France remained, I know not how many days, with the pope and cardinals, revelling and amuſing himſelf. The pope, on this joyful occaſion, gave pardons to the clergy who were in his courts, and plenary indulgences to all for one month to come. He likewiſe preſented the king with the nominations to all his cathedrals and other churches, and in each church the reverſion of two prebends, deferring all his former promiſes, that theſe now made to the king might have the precedency, which was fortunate for many of the French clergy, who were thus provided. He gave alſo reverſions to the dukes of Touraine, Berry and Burgundy, and the lord de Coucy, which threw back all thoſe he had formerly promiſed;

miſed; and the pope was ſo courteous and liberal on this occaſion, that none went away diſcontented.

CHAP IV.

THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS THE DUKES OF BERRY AND BURGUNDY TO THEIR HOMES, TO THEIR GREAT DISSATISFACTION, AND CONTINUES HIS JOURNEY FROM AVIGNON TO LANGUEDOC.

THE king of France reſided with the pope about eight days, during which time his holineſs had fully diſcuſſed with him his ſituation, and what trouble the other pope at Rome gave him, in depriving him of his right, in the ſchiſm he cauſed in the church. The king was willing to do every thing in his power to relieve him, and ſaid that, on his return to France, he would endeavour to provide a remedy, and exert himſelf to unite the church. Upon this he took leave of the pope, and went to Villeneuve, as did his brother and his uncles of Berry and Burgundy.

The king entertained at dinner all the cardinals and the count of Geneva, after which he took leave of them, returning them his thanks for their attentions, ſaying, he ſhould, on the morrow, begin his journey to Montpellier.

The

The cardinals having left the king, it was determined in council, that he ſhould ſet out very early, in company with his brother and the duke of Bourbon. He took leave, therefore, of his uncles of Berry and Burgundy, bidding them return to their own eſtates, as he had not then any further occaſion for them, intending to go as far Toulouſe, and ſummon thither the count de Foix to meet him. His uncles were much diſcontented at this order; but the king's council was at that time ſo formed, that the dukes of Berry and Burgundy had no voice in it, nor weight, but in trifles. The government of Languedoc had been taken from the duke of Berry, and divided into ſeneſchalſhips, which was not only more profitable to the king, but more agreeable to the country; for the duke of Berry, during his government, had grievouſly oppreſſed the inhabitants, by heavy taxes, as I ſhall more fully relate, for it is deſerving to be detailed.

The dukes of Berry and Burgundy, were very melancholy, when they found the king was determined they ſhould not accompany him in his journey; but they diſſembled their thoughts from all but each other, and thus converſed: 'The king is going to Languedoc to hold inquiſitions on thoſe who have governed it, and to treat with the count de Foix, (who is the proudeſt perſon exiſting, and never loved nor eſteemed, though neighbours, the kings of France, England, Caſtille, Arragon or Navarre,) and only takes with him la Riviere, le Mercier, Montaigu and the bègue

de Villaines. What do you ſay to this, brother?' added the duke of Berry. 'Our nephew is young, and if he follow young council he will be deceived, and the end will not be proſperous, as you will ſee. For the preſent, we muſt diſſemble this affront; but the time will come, when thoſe who have adviſed it ſhall repent of it, as well as the king. Let them go whither they pleaſe, in God's name: we will return to our own home; and, ſo long as we are united, they cannot do us any injury, for we are the greateſt perſonages in France.' Such was the language of theſe two dukes.

The king of France left Villeneuve early in the morning, for Nîmes, where he arrived to dinner; but his uncles and the lord de Coucy ſtaid with the pope, at Avignon, four days longer, when they all ſeparated, and each went different ways. The day the king dined at Nîmes, he lay at Lunel, and the next day dined at Montpellier, which was but three ſhort leagues diſtant. He was joyfully received by the citizens, ladies and damſels, who were deſirous to ſee him, and offered him magnificent and rich preſents; for Montpellier is a powerful and wealthy town, full of merchandiſe, and was much valued by the king, when he had conſidered its importance. The citizens told him, it had been infinitely richer than he now found it, before the dukes of Anjou and Berry had plundered it, as they had ſeverally done in their turn. The king compaſſionated them much for the loſſes they had ſuſtained, and promiſed that he would

have

have every grievance reformed, and the government placed on a different footing.

The citizens likewiſe addreſſed the king during his ſtay at Montpellier, ſaying,—'Sire, the poverty of this town is nothing to what you will ſee the farther you advance; for this place has many reſources in its commerce, which the inhabitants carry on by ſea and land. In the ſeneſchalſhips of Toulouſe and Carcaſſone, and in that part of the country, where theſe dukes have laid their hands, there is abſolutely nothing; for they have carried off every thing portable; and you will find the inhabitants ſo poor that thoſe who were in good circumſtances have not wherewithal to cultivate their fields or vineyards. It is melancholy to ſee them, their wives and children; for they had every year five or ſix taxes on their backs, and they compounded for a third, a half, and ſometimes all their property was taken from them; and no ſooner was one tax paid than another was demanded. Theſe two lords, your uncles, ſince they have had the government of Languedoc, have collected, as the accounts will prove, upwards of thirty thouſand francs, from the country, beginning with Villeneuve, near Avignon, to the Toulouſain, as far as the river Garonne, and turning back by the river Dordogne. Since the departure of the duke of Anjou to Naples, this government has been given back to the duke of Berry, and he has more ſeverely oppreſſed the country, which he found rich and plentiful: the duke of Anjou made only the rich pay, who were

well enabled to do ſo; but the duke of Berry ſpares neither poor nor rich: he ſwallows up every thing by means of one Bethiſac, his counſellor and treaſurer, who is a native of Beziers, as you will hear from the complaints the poor will make to you, in crying out for vengeance againſt him.'

The king replied,—'May God forſake my ſoul, if I will not cheerfully liſten to their complaints, and, before I return, provide a remedy for them. I will puniſh the wicked, and have an inquiſition holden on the officers and ſervants of my uncles, who formerly have had this government; and thoſe who have behaved ill ſhall be treated accordingly.'

CHAP. V.

DURING THE TIME KING CHARLES OF FRANCE IS AT MONTPELLIER, THREE OF HIS CHAMBERLAINS UNDERTAKE TO HOLD A TOURNAMENT NEAR TO CALAIS, AGAINST ALL COMERS.

THE king of France reſided at Montpellier upwards of twelve days, becauſe the reſpect and amuſements he enjoyed there from the citizens, ladies and damſels, pleaſed him greatly. Indeed, the king was at this time young and giddy: he therefore danced and carolled with theſe friſky ladies of Montpellier all night. He entertained

entertained them with handſome ſuppers and banquets, and preſented to thoſe moſt in his favour rings and claſps of gold. He acquired ſo greatly the love of the Montpellier ladies that ſome wiſhed he had made a longer ſtay; for it was one continued revel and paſtime the whole time he was there.

You know, or muſt have heard it noticed, that the intercourſe of young gentlemen with the fair ſex encourages ſentiments of honour and a love of fame. I mention this, becauſe there were with the king of France three gentlemen of great enterpriſe and valour, which they were probably induced to diſplay from that intercourſe, as I ſhall relate.

The names of theſe three knights were, ſir Boucicaut the younger, ſir Reginal de Roye and the lord de Saimpi. Theſe knights were chamberlains to the king, and were much eſteemed by him for their worth, for accoutring him ſo ably with his arms, and in other ſervices, ſuch as good knights owe to their lord.

While they were at Montpellier amuſing themſelves with the ladies and damſels, they were called upon to anſwer a challenge in the courſe of the enſuing ſummer: the principal cauſe of this, as I was informed, was as follows.

During the reign of king Charles V. of happy memory, an Engliſh knight of high birth and great renown, called ſir Piers Courteney, came from England to Paris to challenge ſir Guy de la Trimouille, in a combat before the king and lords

of France, and whoever elſe might wiſh to be ſpectators of it.

Sir Guy de la Trimouille accepted the challenge; and the king, with the duke of Burgundy and many of the great barons, were preſent at this combat. I believe they only ran one courſe with the lance; for the king would not ſuffer more to be done, to the great diſcontent of the Engliſh knight, who ſeemed deſirous of puſhing the combat to extremities. He was, however, appeaſed by fair ſpeeches, ſaying, he ought to be ſatisfied, for he had done enough; and he was preſented with very rich gifts by the king and the duke of Burgundy *.

Perceiving he could do nothing more, ſir Piers Courteney ſet out on his return to Calais; and the lord de Clary, who at that time was a gay and lively knight, was ordered to eſcort him. They rode on until they came to Lucen †, where the counteſs de St. Pol, ſiſter to king Richard of England, reſided. The counteſs was rejoiced to ſee ſir Piers Courteney; for before her marriage with the count de St. Pol, ſhe had been united to his

* Sir Piers Courteney is mentioned by Dugdale, vol. i. p. 639. to have obtained licence, in the 7th Ric. II. to ſend various preſents to the king and lords of France, in return for the honours they had paid him in his combat with a knight of that country. This knight was probably ſir Guy de la Trimouille. The licence is in the Fœdera.

† Lucen. Q. Luzeuz, a town in the comté de St. Pol.

couſin

couſin the lord Courteney *, but he had died young, and the Engliſh called her lady Courteney rather than counteſs of St. Pol. While there, the counteſs, in the courſe of converſation, aſked ſir Piers what he thought of the kingdom of France: he replied,—'Certainly, madam, France is very extenſive, rich and plentiful, and well guarded. In our country we do not form a true eſtimate of it.' 'And are you pleaſed with the reception the lords of France have given you? have they not entertained you handſomely?' 'To be ſure, madam, I am perfectly contented as to the reception I have had; but, in regard to the cauſe of my having croſſed the ſea, they have but ſhabbily acquitted themſelves: and I muſt ſay, that if the lord de Clary, who is a French knight, had come to England, and challenged any one, however high his rank, it would have been accepted, and the terms faithfully fulfilled to his utmoſt pleaſure; but this has been refuſed me. True it is, that ſir Guy de la Trimouille and myſelf were brought into the liſts; but, when we had run one courſe with the lance, I was ſtopped, and ordered from the king to attempt nothing more, for that we had done enough. I therefore ſay, madam, and ſhall ſay and maintain it wherever I go, that I have not met any one able to oppoſe me in arms; and

* This perſon was Hugh Courtney, *ſon* of the earl of Devonſhire; but he died before his father, and of courſe did not inherit the earldom. His widow Maude, daughter of ſir Thomas Holland, married Waleran count de St. Pol.—DUGDALE.

that it has not been my fault, but reſts ſolely with the knights of France.'

The lord de Clary, who was preſent, marked this ſpeech in his memory, and with great difficulty held his tongue, on account of having the engliſh knight under his care. The counteſs of St. Pol replied,—' My lord, you will leave France with much honour, having complied with the requeſt of the king of France, not to proceed further in your combat; for you would have been unable to do more contrary to his will. You cannot incur any blame in this matter; and all thoſe on each ſide of the ſea that ſhall hear it told, will give you more praiſe than blame: I therefore beg of you to reſt ſatisfied.' ' Lady,' ſaid the knight, ' that I will do; and not give myſelf any further care or trouble about it.'

Here the converſation on this matter ended; and other ſubjects were diſcourſed on, during the day and night they remained. On the morrow, ſir Piers Courtney took leave of the counteſs de St. Pol, who preſented him with a handſome claſp of gold, and another to the lord de Clary, as being his companion, and becauſe the engliſh knight was under his care and eſcort. They left Lucen early in the morning, and took the road to Boulogne, where they lay that night, and the next day rode through Marquiſe to Calais.

Between Boulogne and Calais there are but ſeven ſhort leagues, and a good road; and at the diſtance of two leagues from Calais you enter on the territory of Melle, Oye and Guines, which then

then belonged to the king of England. When they were near to Calais, ſir Piers Courteney ſaid; 'Lord of Clary, we are now on the territories of the king of England: you have handſomely acquitted yourſelf, in eſcorting me; and I give you many thanks for your company.'

The lord de Clary had not forgotten the ſpeech of ſir Piers to the counteſs St. Pol, in the preſence of many perſons; for it had made him ſulky and full of anger, which although at the time he had not noticed as he thought it deſerved, he was unwilling it ſhould paſs off unanſwered; for he conſidered it as preſumptuous and diſhonourable to the chivalry of France. Sir Piers had publicly declared, that he had purpoſely left England to ſeek deeds of arms in France, and had not found any one in that country willing to oppoſe him. The lord de Clary had therefore determined, in his own mind, that ſuch expreſſions ſhould not remain unnoticed. He therefore, on taking leave, ſaid,—'Sir Piers, you are now on the lands of the king of England, whither I have eſcorted you, by orders of my king and my lord of Burgundy. You may recollect that, the day before yeſterday, when we were in the apartment of the counteſs de St. Pol, who entertained us handſomely, you ſpoke with too great latitude, as it ſeemed to me, and too much to the blame and prejudice of the french chivalry; for you ſaid, you had come to the court of the king of France, and had found none willing to oppoſe you in arms: and you ſeemed to have it underſtood, that there was not a knight

a knight in France who dared to tilt with you three courſes with a lance. I wiſh you therefore to know, that I (who am one of the ſmalleſt knights of the realm) offer myſelf, to maintain that France is not ſo devoid of knights, but that you may find many willing to accept your challenge; and if you will accept of me to this intent, either this day or to-morrow, I will meet you without hatred or any ill-will. It is ſolely with a view to defend our honour, and that you may not return to Calais or England, and boaſt you have defeated the chivalry of France without ſtriking a blow: now, ſay whether you will accept my challenge or not.'

'Sir Piers Courteney was ready with his anſwer, and ſaid,—'Lord de Clary, you ſpeak well: I accept your challenge, and propoſe that you be at this place to-morrow, armed as you pleaſe. I will be ſo likewiſe; and we will tilt three courſes with the lance, by which you will recover the honour of France, and give me much ſatisfaction.'

'Agreed,' replied the lord de Clary: 'I will be here at the hour you ſhall appoint.' The two knights then pledged their faith to each other for this tournament, and ſeparated: the lord de Clary went to Marquiſe, which was not far diſtant, where he provided himſelf with armour, a ſhield and lance. He was not long in doing this; for the knights on the frontier of Boulogne and Calais take care to have ample ſupplies. He did it all, however, as ſecretly as he could; for he was unwilling

unwilling that too many ſhould know and ſpeak of it.

In like manner, ſir Piers Courteney, on his arrival at Calais, was not unmindful of the engagement he had made. He had no occaſion to ſeek either for armour or arms, for he had brought with him from England his own proper arms, which were good and ſtrong.

At this time, ſir John Warnes * was governor of Calais, to whom he told the engagement he had made with the lord de Clary. Sir John replied, that he would accompany him, with ſome other knights of Calais. On the enſuing morning, the two knights met at the appointed place; but the engliſh knight was better accompanied than the lord de Clary, for he had with him the governor of Calais. On their meeting, there was not much converſation, for each knew what he was to do.

Both of them were ſtrongly and completely armed, to abide the event, ſuch as the fortune of arms ſhould decide, and they were well mounted. They had their targets faſt buckled on, and their lances given them, which were of ſharp, well-tempered bourdeaux ſteel. Having taken their diſtance, they ſpurred their horſes full gallop, againſt each other, but miſſed their ſtrokes, which ſeemed to vex them greatly. On the ſecond courſe, they met full; and the lord de Clary gave ſir Piers ſo

* I cannot diſcover ſir John Warnes, and muſt ſuppoſe it a miſtake; for ſir William Beauchamp was governor of Calais when the truce was ſigned.

Lord Berners calls him ſir John Bernes.

ſevere

ſevere a blow with his ſtiff and well-tempered lance, that it pierced the target, and, entering deeply into the ſhoulder, ſtruck him off his horſe. The lord de Clary, having ſo ably tilted, paſſed on, and finiſhed his career as an accompliſhed knight ſhould, and remained quiet, but ſeeing the engliſh knight was unhorſed, ſurrounded by his friends as he lay on the ground, and thinking that he might have wounded him, for his lance with the blow was ſhivered in pieces, rode towards him. The Engliſh advanced to meet him, ſaying he was not a courteous tilter. 'Why ſo?' replied the lord de Clary. 'Becauſe you have thruſt your lance into ſir Piers' ſhoulder: you ought and could have tilted more liberally.' 'It was not my part to be over courteous; for I was ready prepared to meet with ſuch an accident, or perhaps a worſe, if it had ſo happened; but ſince he had ſuch pleaſure in juſting, aſk him, or I will for you, if he be ſatisfied, or wiſh for more.'

Sir John Bernes, upon this, ſaid, 'No, ſir knight; you may depart, for you have done enough.' The lord de Clary went away with his company, and the Engliſh carried ſir Piers Courteney to Calais, that his wound might be attended to and cured. The lord de Clary returned to France, expecting to receive great praiſe for the goodly act he thought he had done; but I will tell you how it turned out.

When it was made known to the king of France, the duke of Burgundy, and their council, that the lord de Clary, in accompanying ſir Piers Courteney, had fought with, and ſo dangerouſly wounded him, that

that he was in danger of his life, they were highly enraged againſt him, and in particular ſir Guy de la Trimouille. They declared his conduct deſerved at leaſt confiſcation of his lands, and perpetual baniſhment from the kingdom of France. Others, who were his enemies, ſaid he had acted like an infamous traitor, in challenging and fighting a knight that had been placed under his guard, by the king and the duke of Burgundy; that he was guilty of an unpardonable crime, and ought to ſuffer death.

The lord de Clary was ſummoned to appear, which ſummons he obeyed, and when brought before the king, the duke of Burgundy and the council, was ſharply reprimanded, for having dared to injure a knight who had come from foreign countries to the court of France to perform a deed of arms and gain renown, and had left that court with perfect ſatisfaction to all, and under his ſafeguard: notwithſtanding which, he had on his return, at the boundary of the two kingdoms, challenged him to mortal combat, without having demanded permiſſion of his ſovereign, on whoſe territories he was: that this was a crime deſerving the ſevereſt puniſhment, by which others might take example.

The lord de Clary, on hearing this bitter reproof, was thunderſtruck, for he thought what he had done deſerved a contrary treatment. Having pauſed awhile, he ſaid,—'My lords, it is indeed true that you intruſted to my care ſir Piers Courteney, with orders to eſcort him as far as Calais,

or

or to the borders of the kingdom. Of this I have acquitted myſelf loyally and faithfully, which if neceſſary to prove, I can readily do ſo from himſelf. It is alſo true, that on our road we viſited the counteſs de St. Pol at Luzieuz, who received us very kindly. While there, the following converſation paſſed: The lady aſked ſir Piers, if he were contented with the lords of France, and what he thought of the country? The knight courteouſly replied, 'Madam, the ſtate of France is rich, extenſive and plentiful. With reſpect to its lords, I am perfectly ſatisfied with the reception and entertainments I have had from them, excepting one thing. I have put myſelf to very great expenſe in my preparations and journey to Paris, to perform a deed of arms, but, when arrived there, found none willing to accept of my challenge.' My lords, when I heard this ſpeech before ſuch a lady as the counteſs of St. Pol, ſiſter to the king of England, my blood boiled within me; but, with much difficulty I kept ſilence, becauſe you had entruſted him to my care and protection; and I never gave him the leaſt cauſe to ſuſpect I was any way hurt by what he had ſaid, ſo long as we continued together in France. But true it is, that when we were about to ſeparate on the borders of the country of Guines, I reminded him of his expreſſions to the counteſs de St. Pol, which, I ſaid, were neither civil nor honourable, as he ſeemed to wiſh it to be underſtood, that the chivalry of France was ſo much debaſed that he could not meet with

any

any one who dared to fight with him: that I, as a knight of France, if ſuch were his meaning, offered to prove the contrary, being unwilling that, on his return to England, he ſhould have the power of renewing his boaſtings: that I was ready and deſirous to afford him the pleaſure of tilting three courſes with a lance, either that or any future day. Certainly, my lords, I made this offer for the honour of the kingdom of France and its chivalry, who are here preſent; and it ſeemed to me, that he accepted my challenge with much joy, and fixed the meeting for the morrow, on the ſpot where we were ſpeaking. He then went to Calais, and I returned to Marquiſe, where I provided myſelf with the neceſſary arms, as he was to do at Calais. On the morrow, according to our appointment, we met. He came well attended by ſome of the garriſon of Calais, and ſome of the knights and ſquires of the borders came with me, ſuch as the lord de Montkarel and ſir John de Longvilliers. When we met, we had but a ſhort converſation, and then tilted with ſpears of war, for we were both completely armed, to the beſt of our abilities. The fortune of the combat fell to me, for at the ſecond courſe I drove my lance into him, and threw him on the ground. I then went to ſee what ſituation he was in, and if he wiſhed to continue the combat. The governor of Calais told me that what had been done was ſufficient, and that I might depart. This I did. You have ordered me hither, and here I am. I thought I had acted properly in ſupport of the

honour

honour of the kingdom and its chivalry, and have related to you the exact truth. If I am to be puniſhed for what I have done, I ſhall ſubmit myſelf to the judgment of my lord the conſtable, and the marſhals of France, and alſo to the evidence of ſir Piers Courteney himſelf, with whoſe conſent I have fought this duel, and to the diſcretion of all knights and ſquires of honour in France or England, who may wiſh to attend to it.'

The lord de Clary, having thus clearly exculpated himſelf, greatly ſoftened the anger of thoſe who had ſent for him: but this did not prevent him from being committed to priſon, where he remained a conſiderable time in much danger. His lands were ſeized, and himſelf on the point of baniſhment from France, when the lord de Coucy and the duke of Bourbon, who loved him, interfered, and with great difficulty made his peace, by means of the counteſs de St. Pol, who teſtified to the truth of what he had ſaid, of the converſation that paſſed at her houſe.

On obtaining his liberty, he was addreſſed,—'Lord de Clary, when you challenged ſir Piers Courteney to fight, inſtead of acting, as you thought, very gallantly, you behaved infamouſly; for he was under the protection of the king, and you had orders to conduct him in ſafety to Calais. You committed a great outrage, when you noticed, in the manner you have yourſelf declared, the converſation he held in joke at the counteſs de St. Pol's. Before you had propoſed this combat, you ought to have returned hither to my

lords,

lords, and have told them, that ſir Piers Courteney had held ſuch and ſuch inſolent language againſt the honour of the knights of France in your preſence. They would then have ordered you how to act. Becauſe, therefore, you have not done this, you have been thus puniſhed. Be another time more diſcreet; and return thanks for your deliverance to my lord of Bourbon and the lord de Coucy: they have exerted themſelves much to ſerve you, as has the counteſs de St. Pol; for that good lady took great pains that you ſhould be acquitted.' The lord de Clary replied,—'Many thanks, my lords;' adding, 'I certainly thought I was deſerving more praiſe than blame, when I acted as I did.'

During the ſtay of the king of France at Montpellier, he gave a grand banquet to many ladies and damſels of that town; during which, all I have juſt related was talked over, and the cauſe was, that the three knights, who were deſirous of holding the liſts againſt all comers, wiſhed to avoid falling under like blame to the lord de Clary.

Sir Boucicaut the younger, ſir Reginald de Roye and the lord de Saimpi, offered to hold a field of arms on the frontier of Calais, in the courſe of the enſuing ſummer, againſt all foreign knights and ſquires, for the ſpace of thirty days, and to tilt with blunt lances or others. The king of France, as well as thoſe preſent, thinking this propoſal was rather preſumptuous, remonſtrated with them, and deſired they would put down their

challenge on paper, that if any improper language were made uſe of, it might be corrected; for the king and his miniſters wiſhed to examine it, being unwilling that any improper or unuſual terms ſhould be uſed.

The three knights agreed that this would be right, and, in reply to the king, ſaid they would inſtantly obey his commands. They ordered a clerk, with pens, paper and ink, into another apartment, and dictated to him as follows:

'From the great deſire we have to become acquainted with the nobles, gentlemen, knights and ſquires bordering on the kingdom of France, as well as with thoſe in the more diſtant countries, we propoſe being at St. Ingelvere * the twentieth day of May next enſuing, and to remain there for thirty days complete; and on each of theſe thirty days, excepting the Fridays, we will deliver from their vows all knights, ſquires and gentlemen, from whatever countries they may come, with five courſes with a ſharp or blunt lance, according to their pleaſure, or with both lances if more agreeable. On the outſide of our tents will be hung our ſhields, blazoned with our arms; that is to ſay, with our targets of war and our ſhields of peace. Whoever may chooſe to tilt with us has only to come, or ſend any one, the preceding day, to touch with a rod either of theſe ſhields, according to his courage. If he touch the target, he ſhall find an opponent ready on the

* St. Ingelvere,—a village in Picardy, near Calais.

morrow

morrow to engage him in a mortal combat with three courſes with a lance: if the ſhield, he ſhall be tilted with a blunted lance; and if both ſhields are touched, he ſhall be accommodated with both ſorts of combat.

'Every one who may come, or ſend to touch our ſhields, muſt give in his name to the perſons who ſhall be appointed to the care of them. And all ſuch foreign knights and ſquires as ſhall be deſirous of tilting with us, ſhall bring with them ſome noble friend, and we will do the ſame on our parts, who will order what may be proper to be done on either ſide. We particularly entreat, ſuch noble knights or ſquires as may accept our challenge, to believe that we do not make it through preſumption, pride, or any ill will, but ſolely with a view of having their honourable company, and making acquaintance with them, which we deſire from the bottom of our hearts. None of our targets ſhall be covered with ſteel or iron, any more than thoſe who may tilt with us; nor ſhall there be any fraud, deceit or trick made uſe of, but what ſhall be deemed honourable by the judges of the tournament. And that all gentlemen, knights and ſquires, to whom theſe preſents ſhall come, may depend on their authenticity, we have ſet to them our ſeals, with our arms, this twentieth day of November, at Montpellier, in the year of grace 1389.' Underneath was ſigned, Reginald de Roye, Boucicaut, Saimpi,

The king of France was well pleaſed with this courageous challenge of his three knights, and de-

clared it ſhould have his conſent, if, on examination by his miniſters, there was no fault found with the terms it was couched in. It was objected to by ſome, that it was wrong to fix the place for this tournament ſo near to Calais, as the Engliſh might think it was arrogantly and particularly aimed at them; and that all occaſions of quarrel ſhould be avoided, for a truce had been agreed to for three years between France and England. The king's miniſters were one whole day conſidering the matter, without coming to any concluſion. Some of the moſt prudent ſaid, it ought not to be allowed, nor the whims of wild young knights to be acceded to, for more evil than good might enſue from them.

The king, however, who was young himſelf, greatly inclined towards them, and ſaid,—'Let them perform their enterpriſe: they are young and courageous, and, beſides, have vowed to do ſo before the ladies of Montpellier. We are deſirous they ſhould undertake it, and bring it to the happieſt end they can.'

When the king had thus declared his mind to the council, no one made further oppoſition, to the great joy of the knights. The challenge having been agreed to in the manner the knights had drawn it out, the king called them into his cloſet, and ſaid,—'Boucicaut, Reginald, and Saimpi, be attentive in this your enterpriſe, to guard well your own honour and that of our kingdom: let nothing be ſpared in the ſtate you you keep; for I will not fail to aſſiſt you as far as

ten

ten thouſand francs.' The three knights caſt themſelves on their knees, and returned the king their warmeſt thanks.

CHAP. VI.

DURING THE KING OF FRANCE'S RESIDENCE AT BEZIERS, ACCUSATIONS ARE MADE AGAINST BETHISAC, TREASURER TO THE DUKE OF BERRY.—THINKING TO BE SENT TO THE POPE AND ESCAPE PUNISHMENT, HE CONFESSES HIMSELF A HERETIC AND SODOMITE, BUT IS TRANSFERRED OVER, BY THE OFFICIAL AT BEZIERS, TO THE SECULAR POWER, AND BURNT.

WHEN the king of France had, for fifteen days or more, taken his amuſements with the ladies and damſels of Montpellier, and his miniſters, during that time, had attended to the ſtate of the town, for that had been the cauſe of his coming, and had made many reforms and taken off ſeveral heavy taxes of which the inhabitants had complained, he graciouſly took his leave of the ladies, and one morning very early departed, following the road to Alipiam *, where he dined, and lay that night at St. Thibery †.

* Alipiam. It is Olipiam in the MSS. and Alpiam in Verard. Q. if not intended for Ville Airac, which is on the line from Montpellier to St. Thibery.

† St. Thibery, a town in the dioceſe of Adge, near Pezenas.

On the morrow, after his morning-draught, he ſet off and came to Beziers, where he was received moſt joyfully; for the good people of that town, and the adjoining ones of Pezenas, Cabeſtan and Narbonne *, were anxious to ſee him, in order to make their complaints againſt an officer of the duke of Berry, called Bethiſac, who had impoveriſhed the country all around, by ſeizing whatever he could lay his hands on. This Bethiſac had attended the king's company ever ſince he had left Avignon; but the king's miniſters, who ſought his ruin, never told him, 'Bethiſac, look to yourſelf, for very ſtrict inquiries will be made into your management: there have already been made very heavy accuſations againſt you to the king.' But, on the contrary, they made him good cheer, joked and laughed with him, and promiſed him increaſed honours, in which he was diſappointed, as I ſhall ſhortly relate.

The king of France left St. Thibery at one o'clock in the afternoon, and between three and four entered the town of Beziers. He was met by the biſhop and all the clergy in their robes, and the citizens, ladies and damſels in proceſſion: they formed a lane, through which he rode a foot's pace; and, as he paſſed, they all fell on their knees. In this manner was he conducted to the cathedral, and diſmounted at the portico, where had been erected a rich altar, adorned with holy

* Pezenas, Cabeſtan and Narbonne, towns in Lower Languedoc.

relics

relics from the church. The king, having on his knees very devoutly made his prayers at this altar, was conducted into the church by the biſhop of Beziers and the duke of Bourbon, followed by all the great lords. He remained in the church about half an hour, and then went to the palace that was adjoining, where he, his brother the duke of Touraine, and his uncle the duke of Bourbon were lodged. The other lords were lodged in the town, which was of a ſufficient ſize, for Beziers is a large city.

The king was for three days revelling with the ladies and damſels in Beziers, before any notice was taken of Bethiſac; but the inquiſitors who had been appointed to make inquiries concerning him were not idle, but did their office ſecretly, and diſcovered many atrocious acts deſerving the ſevereſt puniſhment. On the fourth day, Bethiſac was ſummoned before the council, and ſhut up in a chamber for his examination. He was ordered to make anſwer to the following accuſations, and was ſhewn at the ſame time a number of complaints and petitions that had been preſented to the king at Beziers, accuſing him of weak management and ſuch great extortions as made the whole country cry out againſt him. All theſe were read in his preſence. To ſome he gave ſatisfactory anſwers, to others not, ſaying he had no knowledge of them, and referring them to the ſénéſchals of Beaucaire and Carcaſſone, and to the chancellor of Berry. They concluded this examination by telling him, it was neceſſary to commit him to priſon

until he ſhould clear himſelf from theſe heavy charges. This he obeyed, for he could not help it; and, as ſoon as he was gone, the inquiſitors went to his houſe, and ſeized all his papers and accounts of whatever things he had been concerned in, carrying them away to ſearch into them more at leiſure. They diſcovered a variety of tranſactions, and accounts of large ſums that he had extorted from theſe countries.

He was aſked, if theſe accounts were juſt, and what had become of the large ſums he had received; he anſwered, 'that the accounts were juſt; that the whole amount had been paid to his lord of Berry, and had paſſed through his hands, or thoſe of other treaſurers, for which he had received legal acquittances, that were in ſuch a place of his houſe.' Perſons were ſent thither, who laid them before the council: and they were found, on comparing them, to tally tolerably well with the accounts of receipt.

The inquiſitors and the council were ſatisfied, and Bethiſac was no longer cloſely confined. The council conferred together, and ſaid,—'Bethiſac is clear from this accuſation; for it is apparent, that all the ſums the people complain of having been exacted from them have been paid to the duke of Berry. How can we help it if theſe ſums have been extravagantly ſpent?'

Bethiſac's defence was nothing but the truth; for this duke of Berry was the moſt covetous man alive, and if he could only get money, cared not by

by what means; and when he had it, he miſerably expended it, like many of the preſent and paſt times.

The king's miniſters found nothing in the conduct of Bethiſac that was deſerving death. All, however, were not of this opinion; for ſome of them ſaid,—'Bethiſac has made ſuch cruel levies, and ſo impoveriſhed the people, to gratify the paſſions of my lord of Berry, that the blood of theſe poor creatures cries out loudly againſt him; for that he being the only one from theſe parts of the duke's council, and knowing the poverty of the country, ſhould have remonſtrated with the duke, and if he refuſed to liſten to him, he ſhould have come and informed the king and council of the ſituation of the country, and of the duke's intentions: proper meaſures would then have been taken, and himſelf exculpated for the large ſums he was now accuſed of having amaſſed.'

In conſequence, Bethiſac was remanded before the council, and again more cloſely examined, touching the expenditure of the great ſums that had been raiſed and paid to the duke of Berry; for they had found the amount to be three millions of francs. He replied,—'My lords, I cannot make out any clearer account of this: the duke has laid out large ſums in the reparations of his caſtles and houſes, in the purchaſe of lands in the county d'Eſtampes, from the count de Boulonge, and in jewels; and you know he is very careleſs in ſuch purchaſes. His eſtabliſhments, which were very great before, have been much increaſed; and he has made ſuch preſents to Thibaut and Morinot,

Morinot, and the valets about his perſon, that they are become very rich.'

'And you Bethiſac,' aſked the council, 'have you been well paid for the pains and ſervices you have done him? one hundred thouſand francs is a pretty tolerable recompenſe.' 'My lords,' ſaid Bethiſac, 'I am very well ſatisfied with what my lord of Berry has given me; for he wiſhes all his people to be rich.' 'Ha, Bethiſac,' replied the council, 'you now talk like a fool: riches, ill acquired, are neither honourable nor profitable. You muſt return to priſon, and we will conſider what you have now told us, and wait there the king's pleaſure, to whom we will report every thing you have ſaid in your defence.' 'My lords,' replied Bethiſac, 'God aſſiſt me!'

He remained in priſon four days without being noticed by the council. When it was known in the country that Bethiſac had been arreſted and thrown into priſon, and that an inquiſition was holding on his conduct; and that whoever had any complaints to make ſhould come forward; numbers haſtened to Beziers, and preſented petitions and accuſations of heavy charges againſt Bethiſac at the king's palace.

Some complained that he had robbed them of their lands without cauſe; others of the violences he had committed on their wives and daughters. In ſhort, the complaints were ſo numerous, that the king's council were tired of hearing them: they plainly ſhewed how much he was hated by the people, which aroſe from the great exertions

he

he had made to fill the purſe of the duke of Berry.

The council were embarraſſed to know how to act; for the duke of Berry had ſent to Beziers two knights, the lord de Nantouillet and ſir Peter Meſpin, with credential letters to the king. Theſe knights avowed, in the name of the duke, all the acts Bethiſac had committed, as done by his command, and claimed, at the ſame time, the perſon of Bethiſac, that they might conduct him to his lord, the duke of Berry.

The king, from the many infamous ſtories he had heard of Bethiſac, hated him, and he and his brother were inclined to have him put to death; but the council dared not condemn him, as they too much feared the duke of Berry. They ſaid to the king,—'In caſe my lord of Berry takes on himſelf all the acts of Bethiſac, whatever they may deſerve, we do not ſee that, with any plea of juſtice, we can put him to death. For at the time when he raiſed all theſe vaſt ſums, by harraſſing the people with taxes, levies and ſubſidies, the duke of Berry acted as if he were king, with the ſame royal power you have at this moment. We can, however, do one thing, as a puniſhment for his crimes: we may take poſſeſſion of all his goods, moveable and immoveable, and reduce him to the ſtate in which the duke of Berry found him, and diſtribute theſe among ſuch as have ſuffered the moſt from his wickedneſs.'

Why ſhould I make a longer ſtory of it? Bethiſac was on the point of eſcaping, with the loſs indeed

ndeed of his fortune, when other events happened that I will relate. I know not, nor have ever been able to learn but from his own confeſſion, whether he was or was not guilty of the crimes he accuſed himſelf of. He declared he had been for a long time a heretic, and had done many horrid and wicked deeds. According to the information I had, ſome perſons viſited him by night in his priſon, and, to frighten him, ſaid; 'Bethiſac, you are in an unfortunate ſituation; for the king of France, his brother and the duke of Bourbon are determined on your death: and they have had ſo many accuſations againſt your conduct, when you formerly governed Languedoc, that they judge you deſerving the gallows, and you will not eſcape with the confiſcation of your wealth. This has been offered to the king; but he hates you mortally, and refuſed it, ſaying, that both your property and your body too was forfeited to him, and you ſhould not long remain confined. We tell you this, that you may conſider and make the beſt uſe of your time; for to-morrow you will be brought from priſon, and, from the appearances we have obſerved, we ſuppoſe you will be condemned to death.'

This ſpeech greatly terrified Bethiſac, who exclaimed, 'Ah, holy Mary! are there no means to avoid this?' 'Yes,' replied they: 'ſay to-morrow that you wiſh to ſpeak to the council: they will either come or ſend for you. When in their preſence, ſay, 'My lords, I fear I have greatly offended God, and for this offence am I

now

now ſuffering under theſe ſlanderous reports.' They will aſk what you mean. Reply, that you have for a long time erred from the faith, and that you are a heretic. Keep ſteady to this declaration. The biſhop of Beziers, when he hears this, will claim you to be given up to him. This will be inſtantly complied with, for ſuch caſes devolve to the eccleſiaſtical juriſdiction. You will be ſent to Avignon, where no one will venture to accuſe you in oppoſition to the duke of Berry, whom the pope dare not anger. By this means you will eſcape, without loſs of life or fortune; but, if you heſitate in taking advantage of the earlieſt opportunity, to-morrow you will be hanged; for the king hates you from the clamour of the people, with whom you know how unpopular you are.'

Bethiſac unfortunately believed all this falſe information that had been given to him, for thoſe who are in peril of their lives are much confuſed in mind: he ſaid,—'You are my good friends who thus kindly adviſe me, and may God reward you for it! The time may perhaps come when I ſhall be enabled to thank you otherwiſe than by words.' Upon this, his viſitors departed.

When morning came, Bethiſac called the gaoler, and ſaid, 'My friend, I beg of you to go, or ſend, to ſuch and ſuch perſons,' whom he named, in the number of his inquiſitors. He replied, he would do ſo; and they were informed, that Bethiſac wanted to ſpeak with them in his priſon. They haſtened thither, in the hope that they were already

ready acquainted with the purport of his ſending for them. When arrived, they aſked what he wanted: he anſwered,—'My fair ſirs, I have had time to examine the ſtate of my conſcience; and I fear I have greatly offended God, by having for a long time erred in my faith; for I do not believe one word of the Trinity, nor that the Son of God has ever deigned to debaſe himſelf by deſcending from Heaven, and putting on the human form by being born of woman. I believe likewiſe, that when we die, our ſoul dies with us.' 'By holy Mary, Bethiſac,' replied the informers, 'you do indeed err greatly againſt the church: conſider well what you have ſaid, for your ſpeech deſerves the flames.' 'I know not,' anſwered Bethiſac, 'whether my ſpeech deſerves fire or water, but ſuch have been my opinions ever ſince I came to underſtanding, and ſuch will they continue as long as I live.'

The inquiſitors were ſo rejoiced at what he had ſaid, that they would not for the preſent liſten to more, but, on their departure, ſtrictly charged the gaoler not to admit to him man or woman left he ſhould retract his opinions, and haſtened to lay before the council what they had heard. They went to the king, in his chamber, and reported what Bethiſac had declared. He was greatly aſtoniſhed, and ſaid; 'We order him to be put to death: he is a wicked wretch, an heretic and thief. We will, that he be burnt and hanged, that he may have the reward he deſerves; nor for any thing

thing my uncle of Berry ſhall ſay, will I pardon him.'

News was ſoon ſpread through Beziers and other places, that Bethiſac had of his own free will, without the leaſt conſtraint, confeſſed himſelf an heretic and ſodomite, which practice he had long followed, and that the king had condemned him to be burnt and hanged. The inhabitants of Beziers were pleaſed at this, for he was much hated by them. The two knights from the duke of Berry were thunderſtruck, and knew not how to act: at length ſir Peter Meſpin, addreſſing himſelf to the lord de Nantouillet, ſaid,—'I ſuſpect that Bethiſac has been betrayed, and that ſome one, who has been to ſee him in priſon, has frightened him, and adviſed him to accuſe himſelf; and that, if he perſiſt in owning himſelf guilty of theſe horrible and infamous crimes, the church will claim him to be tried according to its canons, and he will be delivered up to the pope at Avignon. Ah, the blockhead will be deceived! for I have already heard the king has declared he ſhall be burnt and hanged. Come, let us haſten to his priſon, and remonſtrate with him on his folly, and make him retract all he has ſaid, for he has been betrayed by falſe friends.'

The two knights immediately went from their lodgings to the priſon, and demanded from the gaoler to ſpeak with Bethiſac. The gaoler excuſed himſelf, ſaying,—'My lords, I am particularly ordered, as well as theſe four ſerjeants at arms, who have been ſent hither by the king, not

to

to ſuffer any one to converſe with the priſoner, under pain of our lives; and this command of the king we dare not diſobey.' The knights perceived all further attempt would be vain, for it was over with Bethiſac, and that he muſt die for the crimes of which he had been wickedly induced to accuſe himſelf. They then returned to their inn, paid their expenſes, mounted their horſes, and ſet out on their return to the duke of Berry.

The end of Bethiſac was, that about ten o'clock in the morning of the next day he was carried from priſon to the palace of the biſhop, where were aſſembled his judges and the official of the biſhop's court. The bailiff of Beziers, under whoſe care he had been committed priſoner, ſaid to the officers of the biſhop; 'Here is Bethiſac, whom we deliver to you as a ſodomite, an heretic, and one erring greatly againſt the faith, who, had he not been a clerk, ſhould have been puniſhed by us according to his deſerts.'

The official demanded if he were ſuch a perſon as he had been repreſented, and that he would, in the hearing of the people, avow or deny it. Bethiſac, who expected to eſcape, by confeſſing himſelf guilty, replied, that the charges were true. He was thrice aſked this queſtion, and thrice acknowledged it aloud. You may ſuppoſe how groſsly he muſt have been deceived: had he kept firm to the defence he had made to the accuſations brought againſt him, he would have been acquitted; for the duke of Berry had taken upon himſelf all the charges of extortion, in raiſing the taxes

taxes in Languedoc. Fortune, one may conclude, played him this trick; and when he was ſeated, as he thought, on the top of her wheel, ſhe ſuddenly turned it round and whirled him in the dirt, as ſhe has done to thouſands ſince the world began.

Bethiſac was, by the official, given over to the bailiff of Beziers, who, in temporal matters, governs for the king: without delay, he led him to the ſquare before the palace, and made ſuch haſte, that Bethiſac had no time to make any defence, nor retract what he had ſaid; for when he ſaw the fire, and that he was put into the hands of the executioner, he was affrighted, and perceived that he had been betrayed. He called aloud to be heard, but no attention whatever was paid to him: he was told,—'Bethiſac, the order is given, and you muſt die: your evil deeds have brought you to a diſgraceful end.' Much haſte was made, for the fire was lighted; and they had erected a gallows and a poſt, with a large collar and chain: they opened the collar by a hinge, and cloſed it again, when round his neck, and dragged him to the poſt, faſtening him thereto with the chain. He cried aloud, ſaying,—'Duke of Berry, they wrongfully and treacherouſly are putting me to death.' The moment he was faſtened to the ſtake, they covered him with dry faggots, to which they ſet fire; and thus was Bethiſac burnt, and his bones hanged: the ſquare being in front of the palace, the king of France, if he pleaſed, might have witneſſed it from the windows of his apartments. Such was the miſerable end of Bethiſac;

and the people revenged on him the many great vexations and violences he had committed during the time he governed Languedoc*.

CHAP. VII.

WHEN THE KING OF FRANCE IS AT TOULOUSE, HE SUMMONS THE COUNT DE FOIX, WHO, ON HIS ARRIVAL, PAYS HIM HOMAGE FOR HIS COUNTY OF FOIX.

THE king of France did not remain long in Beziers after this ſevere act of juſtice, but ſet out with his array, taking the road towards Carcaſſone. Since he had left Avignon, he had been always attended by his marſhal, ſir Lewis de Sancerre. The king did not follow the ſtraight road, but viſited different towns, ſuch as Cabeſtan †, Narbonne ‡, Lymoux §, Mont-royal ‖ and Fou-

* Don Vaiſſette, in his hiſtory of Languedoc, gives very ſatisfactory reaſons, to ſhew that Froiſſart was miſtaken as to the time of Bethiſac's execution, which took place the 22d December, 1389, at Toulouſe, ſome months after the king had left Beziers. For further particulars, I refer to that hiſtory.

† Cabeſtan,—a town in lower Languedoc, dioceſe of Nimes.

‡ Narbonne,—a large city in lower Languedoc.

§ Lymoux,—a city in upper Languedoc, five leagues from Carcaſſone.

‖ Mont-royal.

gaux,

gaux *, thence he returned to Carcaſſone, where he reſided four days. On his departure, he paſſed through Ville-franche †, Avignonet ‡ and Montgiſcard §, in his way to Toulouſe. The inhabitants of this city, being anxious to ſee him, went out in grand proceſſion, handſomely dreſſed, and eſcorted him with much pomp to the caſtle of Toulouſe. The citizens of the town, which is rich and important, made the king ſuch preſents, on his arrival, as well pleaſed him.

When the king had refreſhed himſelf, for three days, in Toulouſe, he was adviſed to ſummon the count de Foix, who had left Béarn, and fixed his reſidence at a town in Foix, called Mazeres, fourteen leagues from Toulouſe; for he had received information of the king's arrival at Toulouſe, and of his intention to ſummon him.

The marſhal of France and the lord de la Riviere, were ordered to wait on the count, who, ſetting out on a Wedneſday after dinner, arrived at a tolerably good town in the Toulouſain, called Iſle Jourdain ‖, and on the morrow, by dinner-time, came to Mazeres. The count de Foix, on

* Fougaux. Q. Fougans, a village in upper Languedoc.

† Ville-franche,—a town in upper Languedoc, dioceſe of Alby.

‡ Avignonet,—a town in upper Languedoc, dioceſe of St. Papoul.

§ Montgiſcard,—a town in upper Languedoc, three leagues from Toulouſe.

‖ Iſle Jourdain,—a town in Armagnac, ſix leagues from Toulouſe.

learning their arrival, received them kindly, from his affection to the king, and from his former acquaintance with them.

The marſhal, addreſſing him, ſaid,—'My lord of Foix, our very dear lord, the king of France, ſends us to invite you to come to Toulouſe; otherwiſe, ſo great is his deſire to ſee you, that he will do his utmoſt to viſit you in your own country.' The count replied,—'Sir Lewis, I will not give the king the trouble of coming to me; for it is more becoming that I wait on him. You will tell him therefore, if you pleaſe, from me, that I will be in Toulouſe within four days.' 'It is well ſaid,' replied the knight: 'we will return, and carry him this your anſwer.' 'That you may boldly do,' ſaid the count; 'but not to-day; for you ſhall now ſtay with me, as I am heartily glad to ſee you both; and in the morning you ſhall ſet out on your return.'

The two knights remained with the count, who was in the higheſt good humour, that day and night, and they converſed on various ſubjects. The count was a wiſe and prudent man, and had a talent of drawing from any perſon with whom he converſed, be is ſtation what it might, his moſt private thoughts. At bed-time, they took leave of the count, intending to ſet out very early in the morning for Toulouſe, which they did, and I believe performed the journey in one day. On their return, they found the king playing at cheſs with the duke of Bourbon, who, on ſeeing them, called out, 'Well, what news? Will the

count

count de Foix come or not?' 'Yes, ſire,' replied la Riviere: 'he has a very earneſt deſire to come to you, and will be here within four days.' 'Well,' ſaid the king, 'we ſhall be very happy to ſee him.'

The two knights then left the king to continue his game, and went to ſup and refreſh themſelves, for they had rode a long day's journey. The count de Foix, who reſided at Mazeres, was not forgetful of the journey he was to make, and his preparations were ſoon ready, for he had given orders on that head when he had firſt heard of the king's coming to Touloufe. He ſent forward to Touloufe purveyances in abundance, ſuitable to his rank, and had ordered two hundred knights and ſquires from Béarn to attend him. On the day the count had fixed for his arrival at Touloufe, he entered the city with upwards of ſix hundred horſe, and well accompanied by knights and ſquires of his vaſſalage. Among them were, ſir Roger d'Eſpaign his couſin, the lord de Coraſſe, the lord de Valentin, the lord de Quer, the lord de Baruge, ſir Eſpaign du Lyon, the lord de Roquepaire, the lord de Lane, the lord de Beſach, the lord de Perle, ſir Peter de Cabeſtain, ſir Menaut de Noailles, ſir Richard de la Mothe, ſir Arnold de Saint Baſile, with many others. He was alſo attended by his two brothers, ſir Peter and ſir Arnold de Béarn, and his two baſtard-ſons, whom he affectionately loved, ſir Evan and ſir Gracien de Foix.

The count had intentions of ſettling on theſe

two ſons the greater part of Béarn, which, being free land and dependant and no one but God, he could diſpoſe of as he pleaſed.

The count de Foix diſmounted at the convent of the Friar Preachers, where he and his houſehold were lodged; and his people quartered themſelves as near him as they could.

The citizens of Toulouſe ſhewed much joy at the arrival of the count de Foix, for they loved him from his being ſo kind a neighbour, and never ſuffering any of his people to make war or commit any violence on their country. They preſented him with the fineſt wines and ſo many other things, that he was well contented with them. He made his entry into Toulouſe rather late in the evening, and remained all that night in his lodgings. On the morrow, about ten o'clock, he mounted his horſe, as did thoſe who were to attend him to the king, conſiſting of more than two hundred knights, all men of diſtinction; and in this ſtate he paraded through the ſtreets of Toulouſe to the caſtle, where the king reſided. He diſmounted in the court within the firſt ſquare of the caſtle, where ſervants took and held their horſes.

The count and his company aſcended the ſteps of the great hall, whither the king had gone from his chamber to wait his arrival; for he was very anxious to ſee him for the gallant actions he had performed, and on account of his fair reputation. The count de Foix, who was very handſome in perſon and in countenance, entered the hall bare headed (for he never wore a cap), with his hair

ſcattered

ſcattered about: when he perceived the king, his brother, uncle, and the lords of France, in the act of doing the king honour, and not till then, he bended very low on one knee: he afterwards roſe up, advanced, and knelt a ſecond time cloſe to the king, who raiſed him up with his hand and embraced him, ſaying, 'Fair couſin of Foix, you are welcome, for your viſit has greatly rejoiced us.' 'My lord,' replied the count, 'I thank you much for what you are pleaſed to ſay.' They had a long converſation together, until dinner time arrived, but I neither heard the words nor the ſubject.

Water being brought, they waſhed, and ſeated themſelves at table. The archbiſhop of Toulouſe was ſeated at the head of the king's table, next to him the king, then his uncle the duke of Bourbon, then the count de Foix, the counts de la Marche and de Vendôme, and none others. At the ſecond were ſeated, the lord Charles d'Albret, the count de Harcourt, the lord Philip de Bar, and four other knights attached to the count de Foix. At another table were placed, the marſhal de Sancerre, ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, and eight of the count's knights. This dinner was magnificent and ſplendid in all reſpects. When they had dined, the tables were removed; and, grace being ſaid, they amuſed themſelves in various ways. The king and the lords were on their feet nearly two hours, in the preſence-chamber, liſtening to the minſtrels, for the count de Foix took delight in them.

After this, wine and ſpices were brought, and the comfit box was preſented ſolely to the king by the count de Harcourt. Sir Gerard de la Pierre did the ſame to the duke of Bourbon, and ſir Menaut de Noailles to the count de Foix*.

When this was done, it was about four o'clock in the afternoon: the count de Foix took leave of the king, the duke of Bourbon and the other lords, and, leaving the hall, went into the court, where he found his horſes and attendants waiting for him. The count and his company having mounted, returned to his lodgings, much pleaſed with the reception and entertainment the king of France had given him, and praiſed him exceedingly when converſing with his knights. During the time the king of France and count Gaſton de Foix were at Toulouſe, many tokens of affection paſſed between them, which was encouraged to the utmoſt of their power by the marſhal de Sancerre and the lord de la Riviere, becauſe they ſaw the king, as

* 'There was another cuſtom at the tables of the king and great barons, which was not uſual at the entertainments of private perſons. Beſide the ſpices which compoſed the deſert, and were intended for the gueſts in common, there were other more rare ſpices, that were ſerved in a box divided into compartments, which was of gold, ſilver, or ſilver gilt, and called a 'dragebir' (comfit box.) It was commonly a ſquire or ſome perſon of diſtinction who had the honour to preſent it to his lord alone, unleſs he wiſhed to have particular reſpect paid to any of his gueſts, to whom he ſent it.' Froiſſart is then quoted as in the text, by M. le Grand d'Auſſy, to whom I refer for further particulars reſpecting this and other ancient cuſtoms, in his 'Vie privé des François.'

well

well as the duke of Bourbon, had conceived a friendſhip for the count de Foix.

The count de Foix one day entertained at dinner the duke of Touraine, the duke of Bourbon, the count de la Marche, and the other French lords. The dinner was beyond meaſure grand and plentiful, with numerous diſhes and devices. Upwards of two hundred knights were ſeated at table, ſerved by thoſe of the count de Foix; and, juſt as the tables were on the point of removal, the king of France, who had dined at the caſtle, made his appearance, attended by the lord Charles d'Albret and the lord Philip de Bar, his couſin-germans. He could not reſiſt the pleaſure of ſeeing this company, and had come to the lodgings of the count attended by only eleven others.

The count de Foix and the whole company were highly pleaſed at this condeſcenſion of the king in coming to viſit him. Various were the diverſions on this occaſion; and the Gaſcons and French tried their ſkill and ſtrength in wreſtling, throwing the bar or javelin for the fartheſt or higheſt; and it was night before the king and the company ſeparated. The count preſented that day to the duke of Touraine, the duke of Bourbon, and to the knights and ſquires attached to the king, more than ſixty courſers, palfreys and ambling mules, all ſaddled and capariſoned becoming their different ranks. He gave alſo to the minſtrels of the king, the duke of Touraine and the duke of Bourbon, two hundred golden crowns, and to the heralds the like ſum. All, therefore, were loud in the praiſe of his generoſity.

On

On the fourth day after this entertainment, the count de Foix, well attended by the barons and knights of Béarn and Foix, waited on the king, at the caſtle, to perform what had been required of him; that is to ſay, his homage for the county of Foix and its dependancies, reſerving to himſelf, as free land, Béarn. There had been, before this, many treaties negotiated between the king and count de Foix, through the king's miniſters, the lord de la Riviere, ſir John le Mercier and the biſhop of Noyon, who had lately arrived from Avignon; but theſe treaties were kept very ſecret. It was ſaid, that the count de Foix required of the king that his ſon Evan de Foix ſhould, after his deceaſe, inherit that country, in conſideration of which the king ſhould receive, on the day of the count's death, one hundred thouſand francs; that his other ſon, ſir Gracien, ſhould hold the lands of Aire, in Béarn, with the good towns of Aire and Mont-marſen; and that all the lands the count then held in Béarn, ſhould revert to his heir, the viſcount de Châteaubon. This diſtribution had cauſed a difference between the count, his barons and knights; ſeveral of whom ſaid, that this could not be legally done without the public conſent of the vaſſals of Béarn and Foix. As an intermediate ſtep, homage was made of the county of Foix to the king of France, who, by the advice of his council, ſaid to the count and barons of Foix,—'I now hold in my hand the homage for my county of Foix; and if the ſucceſſion ſhould happen to be vacated, by the death

of

of our couſin, the count de Foix, in our lifetime, we will come to ſuch reſolutions concerning it, through the advice of our council, that Evan de Foix, and all the vaſſals of that county, ſhall be perfectly ſatisfied therewith *.'

This ſpeech was ſufficient for the count and his barons then preſent. When the regulations had been properly written out and ſealed, the count de Foix took leave of the king, his brother, uncle, and the French lords; but that day he dined with the king, and in the evening returned to his lodgings. On the morrow, after drinking a cup, he departed from Toulouſe, leaving his purveyors behind to pay his expenſes, and, having croſſed the Garonne, at the bridge of Toulouſe, returned to his own country, by way of Mont-marſen, and arrived at Orthès, where he diſmiſſed all who had accompanied him, retaining only thoſe neceſſary for his ſervice. It was told me, and I believe it, that this viſit of the king of France to Languedoc and Toulouſe, coſt the count de Foix more than forty thouſand francs: great, however, as this ſum was, the count was ſo courteous and liberal, that he very cheerfully paid it.

* Theſe precautions were vain. Matthieu de Foix, a deſcendant of Roger Bernard, viſcount de Caſtel-bon, lord of Moncade, and youngeſt ſon of Gaſton I. count de Foix, having his pretenſions ſupported by the nobility, ſeized the government, and had his right acknowledged by the court of France, through ſome arrangements he made with it.—*Villaret*, tome vi.

CHAP.

CHAP VIII.

THE KING OF FRANCE AND HIS BROTHER, THE DUKE OF TOURAINE, WAGER WHICH SHALL ARRIVE THE SOONEST AT PARIS, FROM MONTPELLIER, EACH ATTENDED BY ONLY ONE KNIGHT.

I BELIEVE that the king of France, during his reſidence at Toulouſe, attended much to the ſtate of that part of his realm. He removed ſénéſchals and other officers, and made ſuch reforms that he was popular with all ranks of people. One day, in the preſence of his brother, his uncle, the duke of Bourbon, and numbers of lords of France and Gaſcony, that it might be had in perpetual remembrance, he gave permiſſion to his couſin-german, the lord Charles d'Albret, to quarter the fleurs de lis of France, alternately with his own; for the arms of Albret were ſimply gules without any diſtinction, but at preſent they are quartered with thoſe of France.

The lord d'Albret conſidered this as a moſt diſtinguiſhed gift; and the day the king had thus enriched the arms of Albret, the lord Charles gave a dinner that coſt him one thouſand francs; and preſented the heralds and minſtrels who had attended it with two hundred francs; which circumſtance cauſed them to proclaim his liberality.

Shortly afterward, it was announced that the king

king would leave Toulouſe, on his return to Paris, and his attendants made preparations accordingly. As ſoon as it was known, the archbiſhop and ſénéſchal of Toulouſe, with the citizens and ladies, came to take their leave of the king, who received them all very kindly. He ſet out from Toulouſe after breakfaſt, and lay the firſt night at Château-neuf d'Aulroy, and then continued his journey to Montpellier, where he was joyfully received. He there remained for three days to amuſe himſelf; for the town and the ladies afforded him much pleaſure. He was, however, very impatient to return to Paris, to ſee his queen. One day, while at Montpellier, he ſaid, jokingly, to the duke of Touraine,—'Fair brother, I wiſh we were at Paris, and our attendants where they now are; for I have as great a deſire to ſee the queen, as I ſuppoſe you muſt have to ſee my ſiſter-in-law.' 'My lord,' replied the duke, 'we ſhall never get there by wiſhing it: the diſtance is too great.' 'That is true,' anſwered the king; 'but I think, if I pleaſed, I could very ſoon be there.' 'Then it muſt be by dint of hard riding,' ſaid the duke of Touraine, 'and not otherwiſe, and I alſo can do that; but it would be through means of my horſe.' 'Come,' ſaid the king, 'who will be there firſt? you or I: let us wager on this.' 'With all my heart,' anſwered the duke, who would at all times exert himſelf to get money. A wager was, in conſequence, made between them, for five hundred francs, who ſhould the firſt arrive

at

at Paris, ſetting out, on the morrow, at the ſame hour, taking with them only one ſervant, or one knight, as they pleaſed. No one attempted to prevent the race from taking place; and they ſet out as they had ſettled it: the lord de Garencieres accompanied the king, and the lord de Vieſville the duke of Touraine. Thus theſe four, who were young and active, rode on night and day, frequently changing horſes, or had themſelves conveyed in carts, when they wiſhed to take any repoſe.

The duke of Bourbon returned by Puy in Auvergne to his own country, and, on his road, viſited his father-in-law, the dauphin of Auvergne, the dauphineſs and their children, who were eight in number, brothers and ſiſters, to the ducheſs of Bourbon by a ſecond marriage.

The king of France and his brother continued their journey with much exertion, to gain the wager. Conſider what pains theſe two young princes muſt have taken, for all their eſtabliſhments were left behind. The king took four days and a half to perform the journey to Paris, and the duke of Touraine only four days and one third*, ſo near were they to each other; but the duke won the wager, by the king ſleeping eight hours at Troyes in Champagne. The duke embarked on the Seine, and went as far as Melun by water:

* The diſtance from Montpellier to Paris is 191 leagues.—GAZETTEER.

there

there he remounted and rode on to Paris, ſtraight to the hôtel de Saint Pol, where the queen and the ducheſs reſided, and inquired after the king (for he was ignorant whether he was arrived or not), and was rejoiced to learn that he was not come. He ſaid to the queen, 'Madam, you will very ſhortly hear of him.' This was true; for, not long after the duke's arrival, the king made his appearance, and the duke ran to him and ſaid, 'My lord, I have won the wager: order me to be paid.' 'That is but juſt,' replied the king, 'and it ſhall be done.' They then related to the ladies their adventures on the road, and how they had come in four days and a half from Montpellier, which was diſtant from Paris one hundred and fifty leagues. The ladies turned the whole into a joke, and laughed at it; but they were ſenſible how greatly they muſt have been fatigued, and nothing but their youth and courage could have borne them through it. You muſt know, the duke of Touraine inſiſted on the wager being paid in ready money.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

THE DEATH OF POPE URBAN AT ROME, CALLED THE ANTI POPE.—POPE CLEMENT WRITES TO THE KING OF FRANCE, HIS UNCLES, AND THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS ON THE OCCASION.—THE ELECTION OF POPE BONIFACE BY THE ROMAN CARDINALS.

ABOUT this period, pope Urban VI. died at Rome, to the ſorrow of the Romans, who loved him much. He was buried, with great ſolemnity, in the church of Saint Peter; and, when this ceremony was ended, the cardinals formed a conclave to elect another pope, and haſtened the matter that it might be done before any intelligence of the death of Urban could be carried to Avignon.

Pope Clement and his cardinals did not hear of the deceaſe of Urban until the tenth day after it had happened. They immediately aſſembled at the palace, where many propoſals were diſcuſſed; and they had ſtrong hope that the ſchiſm of the church would be concluded, and an union formed of the two parties; for this error had laſted too long. They imagined that the cardinals at Rome would not be in any hurry to form a conclave, but would agree to acknowledge the pope of Avignon, and were indulging in theſe flattering hopes, when other accounts forced them to think differently.

They

They ſignified to the king of France the death of Urban, whom they called the anti-pope, and entreated him to ſupport the pretenſions of Clement, by writing in his favour to his cousins the emperor of Germany, the king of Hungary, the count de Vertus, and to the duke of Auſtria, who had acknowledged the late pope Urban, and to requeſt they would agree to reſtore peace to the church; for that there ought not to be any variation in the faith, and, as there is but one God in Heaven, there cannot, nor ought there to be, more than one vicegerent on earth.

When this information arrived at Paris, the duke of Burgundy, to whom the pope and cardinals had likewiſe written to the ſame purport, was with his nephew. The king appeared very much pleaſed on hearing it, and ſaid to the duke,—'Good uncle, we had a great deſire to march a large army to Rome, and deſtroy theſe unbelievers; but this is checked by the death of the anti-pope, for pope Clement and his cardinals have aſſured us that Urban is dead. They ſuppoſe that there will not be any conclave held at Rome to elect another, but that the cardinals will ſubmit themſelves to the obedience of pope Clement. He has likewiſe requeſted, that we would write to our couſins the emperor of Germany, his brother the king of Hungary, to the count de Vertus and to the duke of Auſtria, to ſecure their favour in his ſupport. What would you adviſe us to do?'

'My lord,' replied the duke of Burgundy, 'it is very true that Urban is dead; but we know nothing of the ſtate of the cardinals at Rome, nor of the Romans; nor whether theſe cardinals mean to perſiſt in their opinion. It will be difficult for them to change, as the Romans are their maſters, and as they formerly forced them to elect the archbiſhop of Bari pope, whom they obeyed as long as he lived: they may again force them to elect another according to their pleaſure. You have therefore no occaſion to be in any haſte reſpecting this matter, nor to write to thoſe who will not do much for you in the buſineſs, as they have already ſhewn. Remain quiet, therefore, until you ſhall hear further on the ſubject; for it may happen that the cardinals at Rome may be of one mind, and, though differing with each other, may diſſemble with the Romans, and acknowledge no other pope but Clement; and, in order to keep the Romans in good humour, promiſe them that Clement ſhall fix his reſidence at Rome, which he will very readily conſent to, if the matter could be brought to depend on that. Should this appear probable, it will then be time for you to write to thoſe Chriſtian kings and lords who hold contrary opinions in religion to you, to entreat they would unite to put an end to the ſchiſm, and to promote the re-eſtabliſhment of union in the church. This is what you ought to do; for we are not as yet aſſured what turn the buſineſs may take, and it will not be long before we have further intelligence.'

When

When the duke had ended this ſpeech to the king and council, no one made any reply; for they thought the duke's reaſoning unanſwerable. The king ſeemed convinced by it, and ſaid; 'Good uncle, we believe your reaſons, for you ſee farther into church-affairs than we do; and we will not take any ſteps in the matter without your advice and approbation.' The buſineſs was here ended, and other matters diſcuſſed.

The intelligence of the death of Urban cauſed great diſputes among the ſtudents at the univerſity. They ceaſed following their uſual ſtudies, and were employed in diſputing how the cardinals would act; whether they would elect a pope in the room of Urban, or acknowledge the pope of Avignon. They made it the ſubject of argument, and it was carried on with much heat and animoſity. They knew that Clement had written to the king, to the duke of Touraine, to the duke of Burgundy, and to the miniſters, on the ſtate of his affairs; and he had alſo written, in general terms, to the univerſity, that that body might do as much as was poſſible, and with all diligence, for his aſſiſtance. The ſtudents propoſed ſeveral ſubjects of argument, which were warmly diſcuſſed among themſelves. Thoſe intereſted for Clement ſaid,—'It is time for the king and our lords in France to write to the chiefs in Chriſtendom, ſuch as the emperor of Germany, the king of Hungary, the lord of Milan, the duke of Auſtria, and all who hold contrary opinions reſpecting the pope, and preſs them to return to the true faith; for it would do them infinite honour.'

Three times, in three ſeveral days, the principal ſtudents of the univerſity aſſembled, and went in a body to the hôtel de St. Pol, to entreat the king and his council to put an end to the ſchiſm, and to comply with the ſolicitation of the pope, who had written to them in ſuch humble terms. They, however, were not admitted, nor had any anſwer given to them, which made them very diſcontented: however, the following news, which arrived a few days after, appeaſed them.

The Roman cardinals had aſſembled in conclave, and elected the cardinal of Naples, a prudent and courageous clerk, to the papacy, who took the name of Boniface*. The king of France and his lords, on hearing this, were very melancholy, and thought the ſchiſm in the church likely to continue for a long time. 'Now ſee,' ſaid the duke of Burgundy to the king, 'of how little avail your letters would have been, which they were urging you to write: it has happened juſt as I foreſaw.' 'My good uncle,' replied the king, 'you have indeed judged truly.'

Pardons were offered in abundance by Boniface, and notified to all the clergy in the different kingdoms under his obedience. Thoſe who wiſhed to gain them ſet out on their journey to Rome; but when they approached near Ancona and Romagna, they ran great riſks; for ſir Bernard de la Salle, who guarded this frontier, and made war on the

* Pietro, or Perrin de Tomacelli, cardinal of Naples, pope Boniface IX.

Romans

Romans in the name of Clement, had theſe pilgrims watched on all the roads, and did them much evil, ſeveral of whom were ſlain or loſt. We will for the preſent leave ſpeaking of theſe popes, and introduce other events.

CHAP. X.

THE SURRENDER OF THE STRONG CASTLE OF VENTADOUR IN LIMOUSIN, THAT HAD BEEN THE CHIEF RESIDENCE OF GEOFFRY TETE-NOIR.

YOU have before heard how Geoffry Tête-noir was maſter of the caſtle of Ventadour, which he had held againſt all the force ſent againſt him as long as he lived; that he had laid the country under contributions upwards of thirty leagues round; and that when he died, he had on his death-bed named his two nephews, Alleyne and Peter Roux, to ſucceed him in the command, to whom all the leaders of that garriſon had in his preſence ſworn obedience and fidelity.

After the deceaſe of Geoffry Tête-noir, theſe two brothers governed ſucceſsfully for ſome time, keeping the whole country under ſubjection. This caſtle belonged to the duke of Berry by purchaſe from the count de Montpenſier, and his ſon, John of Berry, bore its title; but, though the garriſon

gave him much vexation, he could not then amend it. He had beſieged it ſeveral times with block-houſes, and preſſed it as much as he could, but in vain: the garriſon held his attempts cheap, and ſallied out, whenever they pleaſed, to overrun the country. The two brothers would not pay any attention to the truce that had been agreed to between France and England, ſaying they were not bound to abide by it, but would make war when and where they pleaſed. The two countries of Auvergne and Limouſin ſuffered greatly; and to remedy it, a gallant knight of Auvergne, ſir William le Bouteiller, with ſir John Bonne-lance, ſir Lewis d'Ambiere, and other knights and ſquires from Limouſin and Auvergne, erected block-houſes before Ventadour, and had there remained the whole of the ſeaſon, at the charge of the country.

It was about this time, as I was told, that the governors laid a plot to entrap ſir William le Bouteiller, and ſir John Bonne-lance, who had done them much miſchief. They determined to have it told theſe two knights in a ſecret way, that they were deſirous of ſurrendering the fort for a certain ſum of florins; for they were tired of remaining there longer, and wiſhed to return to their own country or elſewhere. They imagined the knights would readily comply, for the duke of Berry was eager to gain it on any terms; and they reſolved not to aſk a larger ſum than what might be inſtantly procured. One brother aſked the other, 'What ſum ſhall we fix on?' 'Ten thouſand francs, for that will be enough, as we ſhall have

have beſide the bodies of the two knights by an ambuſh we will place in one of the towers.'

Conſider how fooliſh theſe two Bretons muſt have been to imagine they could deceive two ſuch knights and keep their money. If evil befel them, they are unworthy of regret or pity. Following their plan, they ſent one of their varlets out of the caſtle, ſaying,—'Go as far as the French block-houſes: allow thyſelf to be taken, but demand to be carried to ſir William le Bouteiller or ſir John Bonne-lance, which of them thou pleaſeſt, give them theſe letters, and require an anſwer, as their contents are of conſequence to them and to us.' The ſervant, who thought nothing evil, ſaid he would obey their commands, and advanced to the neareſt block-houſe of the French. On perceiving him, thoſe within came out to meet him and demanded his buſineſs: he ſaid, he wanted to ſpeak with ſir William le Bouteiller or ſir John Bonne-lance. He was conducted to them, for the two knights happened to be then together. When in their preſence, he bowed and took them aſide to deliver his letters, ſaying that ſir Alleyne and ſir Peter Roux had ſent him to them. They were much ſurpriſed on hearing this, and that the governors of Ventadour ſhould write to them. They took the letters, and read them; but their contents were merely to ſay, that Alleyne and Peter Roux would willingly have a parley with them on ſomething to their advantage. When they had peruſed the letters, they were more aſtoniſhed than before, and ſuſpected

ſome treachery. They, however, conſulted together on what could be wanted with them, and returned a verbal meſſage, that if the governors wiſhed to meet them without the caſtle, they would promiſe them, and thoſe who ſhould accompany them, perfect ſecurity for their perſons until they had re-entered the place.

Such was the anſwer the varlet brought back to his maſters. Sir Peter ſaid to ſir Alleyne, 'May we confide in ſuch promiſes?' 'Oh yes,' replied his brother; 'for conſider their word is given, and they are loyal knights incapable of breaking it. We will inform them of our intended ſurrender, which they will eagerly accept.'

On the morrow, about eight o'clock, they ordered the wicket adjoining the gate to be opened, and the bridge to be lowered down, and they leant on the chains until ſir William le Bouteiller and ſir John Bonne-lance arrived, who diſmounted before the bridge, and ordered their attendants to retire. When the two Breton governors, on the bridge, ſaw them, they aſked, 'May we come and converſe with you in ſafety?' 'Yes,' replied the knights; 'but is there no treachery on your ſide?' 'Oh no,' anſwered the Bretons: 'it is now truce between us.' 'Well then, come with all ſecurity, and tell us what you have to ſay.' Peter and Alleyne Roux then paſſed the bridge, and went to the place where they were waiting for them.

The two knights ſaid, 'What is the ſubject of the treaty or parley you wiſh to have with us? Are you inclined to ſurrender Ventadour?' 'Yes,' ſaid

ſaid they, 'but on conditions. We only aſk ten thouſand francs for the ſtores; for we are tired of carrying on the war longer, and wiſh to retire to Brittany or to whatever other country we may chuſe.' The two knights were rejoiced at this propoſal, and replied,—'You offer terms we ſhall not refuſe; but at this moment we have not ſuch a ſum. We will, however, inſtantly ſet about providing it.' 'Well,' anſwered the governors, 'when you have got it, let us know, and we will keep to our offer: but let the matter be moſt ſecret, for if the garriſon ſhould hear of it, they would inſtantly murder us, and you would be diſappointed in your expectations of gaining the place.' Sir William le Bouteiller replied, 'Never fear us: we will manage the buſineſs in ſuch a manner that you ſhall not incur any danger.' On this, they ſeparated: the brothers re-entered Ventadour, and the knights returned to their quarters.

Sir William le Bouteiller and ſir John Bonnelance believing this tranſaction was honourable, no way ſuſpecting the Bretons meant to deceive them and gain poſſeſſion of their perſons as well as money, inſtantly wrote as fair-languaged letters as they could to the duke of Berry, who at that time was at Riom in Auvergne. They deſired one of their gentlemen, who had been well educated, called Guyonnel de Saint-Vydel, to carry the letter, and, having informed him of the fact, deſired he would forget nothing, in his converſation with the duke of Berry, that might induce him to agree to the terms of ſurrender; for they thought

thought he would be well pleaſed, as he had been for a long time very anxious to get poſſeſſion of Ventadour. The ſquire having received the letter, and his inſtructions, what to ſay and how to act, left the block-houſe, and, traverſing Limouſin and Auvergne, rode on until he came to Riom, where I believe he found the duke of Berry.

On entering his preſence, he knelt and gave the duke the letters, recommending to him the two knights, as he knew well how to do. The duke took the letter and read it: when he had a ſhort time conſidered its contents, he was ſo well pleaſed, that he ordered his attendants to take particular care of the ſquire, which was done. The duke called to him ſuch of his council and treaſurers as were with him, and ſaid,—'Here is great news. Our knights, who are blockading Ventadour, write us word they have opened a treaty with Alleyne and Peter Roux, who are willing to ſurrender that place for ten thouſand francs. That is no large ſum: it has coſt Limouſin and Auvergne, yearly, ſixty thouſand francs, as compoſition-money, to be unmoleſted by the garriſon. We wiſh to accept their offer, and as ſpeedily as may be, leſt they ſhould repent of having made it. Now, treaſurers, find me inſtantly ten thouſand francs. We will make a loan of them, as is but juſt; and when we are in poſſeſſion of this caſtle, will levy a tax on all the lands which have paid contribution, that will doubly repay us.'

'My lord,' replied the treaſurers, 'we are prepared: only give us five or ſix days to collect it.'

'You

'You ſhall have them,' ſaid the duke. Thus was the matter ſettled. The treaſurers produced the ſum in golden crowns, and in francs of France, which were packed up in four ſmall boxes.

The ſame day on which thoſe who were to carry the money to the two knights were on their departure, every thing being ready for their ſetting out, the dauphin of Auvergne and the lord Reneil arrived at Riom, on buſineſs with the duke of Berry, ſuch as was common between great lords. They were made welcome by the duke, who was ſo pleaſed at the thought of gaining Ventadour ſo cheaply, that he could not refrain from making them acquainted with it, and ſhewing them the letters from ſir William le Bouteiller and ſir John Bonne-lance. When they had peruſed them, they were ſilent, and the duke, noticing it, ſaid,—'What are you conſidering? Have you any ſuſpicions of deceit? Tell me, before the money be ſent off.' 'My lord,' replied the dauphin, 'you know for how long a time the count d'Armagnac and myſelf have been employed by the countries of Limouſin, Cahorſin, Rouergue and Auvergne, to gain poſſeſſion, by force or otherwiſe, of all the enemy's forts in theſe feneſchalſhips. We have entered into ſeveral treaties with many of them, but we never could any way make the leaſt impreſſion on the garriſon of Ventadour, to induce them to ſurrender; and ſcarcely would they deign to return us an anſwer when we ſent to them. If, therefore, they have agreed to the treaty you have ſhewn us, it cannot be from want of proviſion; for,

ſhould

should no purveyances enter the fort for eight years, I know they have enough; and it is this which aſtoniſhes us, and makes us ſuſpect treachery; for ſuch men at arms, when ſhut up in fortreſſes, have a lively imagination, and, when it turns to wickedneſs, they know too well how to ſucceed: therefore, my lord, be cautious how you act.'

'In God's name,' anſwered the duke of Berry, 'you do not tell us any thing extraordinary, but have well ſpoken, when you thus adviſe us; and I will take more precautions than I at firſt intended.'

He then called to him a knight, whoſe name was ſir Peter Meſpin, and ſaid,—'You will go with the ranſom-money for Ventadour to the block-houſes before that place, and tell ſir William le Bouteiller and ſir John Bonne-lance, from us, to be very cautious how they act, reſpecting their treaty, and not to put too much confidence in theſe Bretons of Ventadour; for that we have had ſuch intelligence concerning them, of which they are ignorant, they muſt be very prudent and obſerving.'

The knight undertook the journey, and, being ſoon ready, departed with the money from Riom, and rode on until he arrived at the block-houſes, where he was kindly received by his companions. The money was unpacked, and placed in ſecurity. Sir Peter Meſpin, after ſome general converſation, told his meſſage as follows: 'My lord of Berry orders me to inform you, ſir William and ſir John, that you muſt act with the greateſt precaution in

this

this treaty with the governors of Ventadour, that you may not loſe your own perſons and the money he ſends you by me, for that he has had accounts given him of the characters of theſe people that diſpleaſe him much, which is the reaſon he is anxious for you to act with prudence to be a match for them, as he ſuſpects this offer is only made to betray you. The countries of Auvergne and Limouſin would many times have given ſixty thouſand francs for the evacuation of Ventadour, which the governors well knew, and now they offer it to you for ten thouſand: it is this which makes my lord ſuſpect treachery.'

The two knights were for a moment penſive, and then ſaid,—'Two heads are better than one. You have well ſpoken, and we thank you for the advice you have given. You will remain here to aſſiſt us, which will be but right, for within two days we ſhall know how the matter will turn out.' Sir Peter Meſpin replied, he would cheerfully ſtay with them.

Shortly after this, the two knights ſent one of their ſervants to the caſtle, for there was now a truce between them, to let the governors know the ten thouſand francs were come, and that they were ready to complete the bargain. They replied, they would keep to their agreement, that they might come when they pleaſed, or inform them when they were to bring the money.

Alleyne and Peter Roux, who had no good inclinations, as was proved againſt them, had already made their preparations for the capture of the two knights.

knights. They had thus planned it. At the entrance of the caſtle of Ventadour, and withinſide, is a large tower, that commands the gate; and, without having firſt gained this tower, the caſtle cannot be won. It was for this reaſon, it was always kept well ſtored with artillery, proviſion and men, that in caſe the caſtle ſhould be ſurpriſed, the garriſon might retire thither in ſafety.

The two Bretons, whoſe heads were full of malice, poſted in this tower thirty determined men, armed at all points; who, when the French ſhould think themſelves in ſecure poſſeſſion of the caſtle, towards late in the evening, were to ſally forth and ſlay all without mercy. Every thing being now ready, they ſent to ſir William le Bouteiller and ſir John Bonne-lance that they might bring the money in all ſecurity to the caſtle, the gates of which would be thrown open to them.

The French knights were all alive at this meſſage, and ſaid to the ſervant who had brought it, 'Return to thy maſters, and tell them from us, that we will be with them to-morrow morning.'

When the ſervant was gone, the two knights aſſembled a larger council than ever they had before done, on account of the orders ſir Peter Meſpin had brought from the duke of Berry.

It was reſolved in this council to place an ambuſcade near the caſtle, and that the two knights ſhould go thither accompanied by thirty men armed ſecretly like themſelves. On their entrance into Ventadour, they were cautiouſly to examine every part of it: if they ſhould perceive any thing that could

could induce them to ſuſpect treachery, they were to ſound a horn and ſeize the draw-bridge. On hearing this horn, the ambuſcade was to advance full gallop, diſmount at the bridge, and gain the caſtle.

In the manner in which they had planned it the project was executed; and on the morrow morning, all being prepared, they rode forward, and placed a large ambuſh of ſix ſcore lances, and then, with thirty companions, ſecretly armed, went to Ventadour, carrying ſir Peter Meſpin to aſſiſt them with his advice.

They did not forget the ranſom-money, which was neatly packed up in three baſkets on the backs of two ſtrong horſes. They found Alleyne and Peter Roux at the barriers, which were thrown quite back on their approach: having paſſed them, and entered the gate, the brothers would have cloſed the barriers again; but the French knights ſaid,—'Let them remain: is it a fair bargain or not? You know you have engaged to ſurrender the caſtle for ten thouſand francs in hard money: they are ready, and on the two ſumpter horſes you ſee. If you act loyally to us, we will do the ſame to you.'

They knew not what anſwer to make to this ſpeech; but, to prevent them having any ſuſpicions, they ſaid, 'You ſay well; and we are willing to act as fairly as yourſelves.'

The French party paſſed on, and the barriers remained open. Had they been cloſed, the ambuſcade would never have been able to arrive in time

to

to counteract the trick the Bretons intended playing them, and their ſcheme would have ſucceeded: All having entered the gate, Alleyne and Peter Roux went to ſhut it; but the French ſaid to Alleyne,—'Let it be open: we wiſh it, for we are ready to pay you down the money as agreed upon between us.' 'Be it ſo,' replied the Bretons: 'let us ſee the caſh.' 'That you ſhall,' ſaid the French, and inſtantly ſpread on the ground a ſheet, on which they emptied the florins. While the two Bretons were examining the money, which made a handſome heap, the knights were doing the ſame to the caſtle; and, in conſequence, ſir Peter Meſpin ſaid to ſir William le Bouteiller, 'Have that tower opened before you count the money, for there may perchance be in it an ambuſh to ſurpriſe us, and we may loſe our lives as well as our money.'

On this, ſir William ſaid to Alleyne Roux, 'Let that tower be opened; for we will have that done before we proceed any farther.' Alleyne replied, 'that he would do no ſuch thing, for the keys were loſt.' The moment he had uttered this, the knights were more ſuſpicious than before, and ſaid; 'Alleyne, it is impoſſible that the keys of the principal tower ſhould be loſt. Open it by fair means, or we will have it forced; for you have promiſed to ſurrender to us the caſtle, as it is, without fraud or treachery, for the ſum of ten thouſand francs, which you now ſee lying before you. Alleyne anſwered,—'I will neither open it myſelf, nor ſuffer it to be done, until I ſhall have received

and

and placed in ſecurity the whole money: when that is done, I will ſeek for the keys.' The knights replied,—'We will not wait ſo long; and we tell you plainly, that we expect no favour from your laſt ſpeeches, which clearly indicate that you mean to deceive us. We therefore arreſt you, Peter and Alleyne Roux, in the names of the king, our lord, and the duke of Berry. The tower ſhall be opened by force, though the doors of it be broken; and every part of it, as well as of the caſtle, ſhall be minutely ſearched, to ſee if you have not placed an ambuſh to ſurpriſe us, and regain the caſtle. Should any ſuch be found, you are loſt, paſt redemption, as in juſtice due to treaſon; but if, on the contrary, the caſtle be in the ſituation it ought loyally to be, from an honourable bargain, we will punctually keep every article of our treaty, and you ſhall be ſafely conducted whitherſoever you may pleaſe; even as far as the gates of Avignon,' ſhould you deſire it.'

The two brothers were thunderſtruck, and half dead, on being thus arreſted; and, hearing this declaration of the knights, their courage failed them, and they repented having gone ſo far, for they found their intentions muſt now be diſcovered. The French knights ſaw plainly they were guilty of what they had ſuſpected, and that the caſtle was not meant to be ſurrendered. They made a ſign for him who bore the horn to ſound for their ambuſcade to advance: which having done, thoſe in ambuſh ſtuck ſpurs to their horſes, ſaying, 'Let us haſten to Ventadour, for we are wanted:

our people have not found things as they expected, and have been deceived by Alleyne and Peter Roux.'

They were ſoon at the caſtle, for it was not far diſtant, and the barriers and gate being open, though well guarded by the French, for the Bretons were no longer maſters, they entered the place, and found their captains in the court talking to the garriſon. The governors were more aſtoniſhed than before, on ſeeing themſelves thus ſurrounded by their enemies; for they knew they had acted diſhonourably.

Thoſe within the great tower were ignorant of what was going forward; for the openings in the walls were too high for them to ſee what paſſed. Some ſaid, 'We hear in the court a great noiſe: our people may perhaps be tricked, for the French are a cunning race. We thought to deceive, but we may be deceived, and Alleyne, as well as ourſelves, may be entrapped and taken; for we cannot get out without his permiſſion.' They would willingly have been any where elſe; for their governors had brought them into a melancholy ſituation.

Sir William le Bouteiller and ſir John Bonnelance, finding themſelves ſo ſuperior in force, ſpoke out more boldly their ſentiments, and ordered the caſh, which was ſcattered over the ſheet, to be collected and replaced in the baſkets, before the face of the two brothers, who were ſurrounded by the French. They ſaid; 'Alleyne and Peter, give us the keys of the tower; for it muſt and

ſhall

ſhall be examined, to ſee if any one be within it;' but they anſwered, in the hope of prolonging the time,—'Begin your ſearch elſewhere, and come here at the laſt.' But the knights replied; 'Alleyne, you trifle too much with us, for we will examine this tower firſt; and, if you make any further reſiſtance, we will put you to death with our daggers.' On hearing this, they feared they would put their threat into execution; for all avoid death as long as they can, though, in good truth, it would have been more honourable for them had they been ſlain, than carried away, and afterwards puniſhed for this act, by a diſgraceful death, as you will ſpeedily hear in this hiſtory.

During the diſpute, Peter Roux thought of an expedient to excuſe their conduct, but this was of no avail, and ſaid; 'My lord William, and you ſir John, it is indeed true that there are in this tower thirty armed men, whither my brother and ſelf have with much difficulty forced them; for we well knew they would not aſſent to our treaty with you. It is for this reaſon that we have confined them in that tower until you ſhould be maſters of the caſtle; and we will, with your permiſſions, leave them there, to be your priſoners. Give us the money, the whole, or part of it, as you are bounden to do, and let us go away.'

The knights were tolerably ſatisfied on hearing this; but ſir William le Bouteiller, having conſidered a little, ſaid; 'Whatever truth may be in what you have told us, before we unpack the money again, we muſt have all the keys of the caſtle

delivered to us, and the different parts pointed out to which they lead.' Alleyne, ſeeing he could not longer delay, ſent for them to the room wherein they were depoſited. On their being brought to the court, the knights ſaid, 'Now, explain to us what gates they unlock, and whither they lead.' Very much againſt their will, they pointed out the keys of the great tower, for their deſtruction lay in it. When they had poſſeſſion of them, they opened its gates, and found the thirty companions completely armed, who had been therein hid.

Alleyne was much caſt down, when he ſaw the French knights draw themſelves up in array before the gate, and heard ſir William le Bouteiller ſay,—'You are hidden within this tower, come forth inſtantly and without fear, under pain of being all put to death. We ſhall make you our priſoners, and you need not fear any puniſhment if you tell us the truth.' When they ſaw and heard the French offer them pardon, taking them as priſoners only, they flung down their ſtaves and arms, and ſurrendered, for defence would not have been of any avail.

Theſe men were then ſeparated, and examined one by one in the preſence of Alleyne and Peter Roux, and acknowledged the intended treaſon, which they now could no longer deny. The French knights addreſſed them,—'It is very diſpleaſing to us, that you ſhould have been guilty of ſo diſgraceful a crime. We ſhall not puniſh you for it: as it ſeems to us ſo heinous, we ſhall leave it to my lord of Berry; and, if he will ſhew you mercy,

mercy, we ſhall not object. We rather hope he may be ſo inclined, from the great pleaſure the poſſeſſion of this caſtle will give him, which was the thing in the world he was moſt anxious to gain.

This ſpeech gave ſome hopes to the two brothers, who found themſelves fallen into a ſimilar trap to what they had laid for others. They were confined in rooms well guarded, and the garriſon in the towers and in other parts of the caſtle. It was then thoroughly viſited, and found full of ſtores and proviſion; all of which they left untouched, contenting themſelves with the money and arms they diſcovered, and which, as fair plunder, was divided among them; but the priſoners were given to the knights.

Thus, as I have related, was the ſtrong caſtle of Ventadour regained by the French. Sir William le Bouteiller appointed a valiant and prudent ſquire of Limouſin, called Peter Madich, governor, with thirty good lances for its defence. He ranſomed ſuch as were deſerving of it; but having diſcovered among the priſoners ſeveral renagade Frenchmen, who had been cruel plunderers, he had their heads cut off, or hung them on a new gallows that had been erected in front of the caſtle. When all things had been ſettled, the two knights reſolved to ride to Riom, to wait on the duke of Berry, and carry Alleyne and Peter Roux with them.

News was ſoon ſpread abroad that Ventadour was retaken, to the great joy of the inhabitants of

Auvergne and Limouſin; for the enemies of the realm had kept poſſeſſion of it fifteen years, and, during that time, had done much miſchief to the country, and had greatly impoveriſhed it.

Sir William le Bouteiller had found in the caſtle of Ventadour a young and handſome ſquire from Brittany, called Monadich, a couſin to Geoffry Tête-noir, who had lately left a convent in Brittany, and come thither to learn the art of war; for he would not be a monk. The French knights wanted to have him beheaded, or hanged like the others; but ſir William took compaſſion on him, and ſaved his life, for which he ſwore he would faithfully ſerve him, and remain for the time to come a loyal Frenchman.

They made no long ſtay after this, but, having pulled down the block houſes, went to the duke of Berry. The men at arms ſeparated, each going to his own home. The knights arrived at Riom, with the two brothers priſoners. They were much caſt down, and on the road entreated ſir William and ſir John to intereſt themſelves in their behalf, that the duke might not be too ſevere on them. The duke was with his ducheſs at Riom, and moſt kindly received the two knights: he conſidered the gain of the caſtle of Ventadour as a very gallant exploit, for which he made them handſome and rich gifts.

The knights aſked him, what was his pleaſure reſpecting the two priſoners. He ſaid, he would conſider of it; which having done, it was thought, by his council, moſt adviſeable to ſend them to the

the king at Paris. The ſénéſchal of Auvergne was ſent for, and to him were delivered the Bretons. He carried them to Paris, where they were confined in the caſtle of Saint Anthony *, under the guard of the viſcount d'Aſer, who was at the time governor of it. They were not kept long in priſon, but delivered over to the provoſt of Paris, who carried them to the Châtelet, where they were tried and judged guilty of death, as traitors and robbers. They were then given up to the hangman, who placed them bound in a cart, and carried them through the ſtreets, with ſound of trumpet, to a place called Las Halles, and put on the pillory, which was turned four times round that the populace might view them. Their actions were then read aloud; after which they were beheaded and quartered, and their quarters fixed to the four principal gates of the town. Thus did Alleyne and Peter Roux loſe their caſtle of Ventadour, and forfeit their own lives by a diſgraceful death.

* Probably the Baſtille, which was at the gate of St. Anthony before the Revolution in 1789.

CHAP. XI.

THREE FRENCH KNIGHTS HOLD A TOURNAMENT AT SAINT INGLEVERE, NEAR CALAIS, AND DEFEND THE LISTS, FOR THIRTY DAYS, AGAINST ALL COMERS, FROM ENGLAND AND ELSEWHERE.

AT this ſeaſon, the truce between England and France was punctually obſerved on ſea and land by both parties, excepting a few pillagers in Auvergne, who continued a war againſt the peaſants, on each ſide the river Dordogne. Their principal leaders, who had ſurrendered on capitulation, were not openly guilty of any breach of the truce, but ſecretly encouraged the miſchiefs that were daily committed in Auvergne. Such complaints were made of this to the king of France, that he determined, with the advice of his council, to remonſtrate with the king of England on the conduct of theſe pillagers, who, notwithſtanding the truce, ſtill carried on a war in Auvergne and the adjoining country, which could not be ſuffered, neither ought it to be. I believe the king of England excuſed himſelf, by ſaying that thoſe who had committed the acts complained of were lawleſs people, over whom he had no controul.

During the time in which theſe things were paſſing, the three knights before mentioned, who had undertaken to maintain the liſts againſt all comers,

comers, at Saint Inglevere, near Calais, namely, ſir Boucicaut the younger, the lord Reginald de Roye and the lord de Saimpi, were making preparations to fulfil their engagement. This tournament had been proclaimed in many countries, but eſpecially in England, where it had cauſed much ſurpriſe, and excited ſeveral knights and ſquires, who were fond of adventures and deeds of arms, to confer on the ſubject. Some ſaid they would be blame worthy, if they did not croſs the ſea, when the diſtance was ſo ſhort to Calais, pay a viſit to theſe knights and tilt with them. I will name thoſe were the moſt eager in theſe converſations. The firſt was ſir John Holland, earl of Huntingdon, ſir John Courtenay *, ſir John Traicton †, ſir John Goulouffre, ſir John Rouſſel ‡, ſir Thomas Scorabonne §, ſir William Cliſeton ‖, ſir William Clinton, ſir William Taillebourg ¶, ſir Godfrey de Seta, ſir William de Haquenay **, ſir John Vobeas, ſir John d'Ambreticourt, ſir John Beaumont and many more, to the amount of upwards of one hundred knights and ſquires, who ſaid,—'Let us prepare ourſelves to attend this tournament near Calais; for theſe French knights only hold it that they may have our company:

* My MSS. have ſir Peter Courtenay.
† Sir John Traicton. Q. Drayton. The MSS. Peter.
‡ Sir John Rouſſel. Q. Ruſſel.
§ Sir Thomas Scorabonne. Q. Sherborne.
‖ Sir William Cliſeton. Q. Clifton.
¶ Sir William Taillebourg. Q. Tallboys.
** Sir William de Haquenay. Q. Hackney.

it

it is well done, and ſhews they do not want courage: let us not diſappoint them.

This challenge was made ſo public in England that many who had no intention of taking part themſelves, ſaid, they would go thither to witneſs the performances of others. Such knights and ſquires as propoſed being there, when the appointed term was approaching, ſent beforehand their purveyances, and arms for tilting and for war, to Calais. Sir John Holland, half brother to the king of England, was the firſt to croſs the ſea: more than ſixty knights and ſquires accompanied him, and took up their quarters in Calais.

At the beginning of the charming month of May, the three before mentioned young French knights were fully prepared to maintain their challenge in the liſts at Saint Inglevere. They firſt came to Boulogne, where I know not how many days they tarried, and then went to the monaſtery of Saint Inglevere. On their arrival, they learnt that numbers of Engliſh knights and ſquires were come to Calais. This gave them much pleaſure; and to haſten the buſineſs, and that news ſhould be carried to the Engliſh, they ordered three rich vermilion-coloured pavilions to be pitched near the appointed place for the liſts, and before each were ſuſpended two targets, for peace or war, emblazoned with the arms of each lord. It was ordered, that ſuch as were deſirous of performing any deed of arms ſhould touch, or ſend to have touched, one or both of theſe targets according

to

to their pleaſure, and they would be tilted with agreeably to their requeſt.

On the 21ſt of the month of May, as it had been proclaimed, the three knights were properly armed and their horſes ready ſaddled, according to the laws of the tournament. On the ſame day, thoſe knights who were in Calais ſallied forth, either as ſpectators or tilters, and, being arrived at the ſpot, drew up on one ſide. The place of the tournament was ſmooth, and green with graſs.

Sir John Holland was the firſt who ſent his ſquire to touch the war-target of ſir Boucicaut, who inſtantly iſſued from his pavilion completely armed. Having mounted his horſe, and graſped his ſpear, which was ſtiff and well ſteeled, they took their diſtances. When the two knights had for a ſhort time eyed each other, they ſpurred their horſes and met full gallop with ſuch force that ſir Boucicaut pierced the ſhield of the earl of Huntingdon, and the point of his lance ſlipped along his arm, but without wounding him. The two knights, having paſſed, continued their gallop to the end of the liſt. This courſe was much praiſed. At the ſecond courſe, they hit each other ſlightly, but no harm was done; and their horſes refuſed to complete the third.

The earl of Huntingdon, who wiſhed to continue the tilt, and was heated, returned to his place, expecting that ſir Boucicaut would call for his lance; but he did not, and ſhewed plainly he would not that day tilt more with the earl. Sir John

John Holland, ſeeing this, ſent his ſquire to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi. This knight, who was waiting for the combat, ſallied out from his pavilion, and took his lance and ſhield. When the earl ſaw he was ready, he violently ſpurred his horſe, as did the lord de Saimpi. They couched their lances, and pointed them at each other. At the onſet, their horſes croſſed; notwithſtanding which, they met; but by this croſſing, which was blamed, the earl was unhelmed. He returned to his people, who ſoon re-helmed him; and, having reſumed their lances, they met full gallop, and hit each other with ſuch force in the middle of their ſhields, that they would have been unhorſed had they not kept tight ſeats by the preſſure of their legs againſt the horſes' ſides. They went to the proper places, where they refreſhed themſelves and took breath.

Sir John Holland, who had a great deſire to ſhine at this tournament, had his helmet braced and graſped his ſpear again; when the lord de Saimpi, ſeeing him advance on a gallop, did not decline meeting, but, ſpurring his horſe on inſtantly, they gave blows on their helmets, that were luckily of well-tempered ſteel, which made ſparks of fire fly from them. At this courſe, the lord de Saimpi loſt his helmet; but the two knights continued their career, and returned to their places.

This tilt was much praiſed; and the Engliſh and French ſaid, that the earl of Huntingdon, ſir Boucicaut and the lord de Saimpi, had excellently

lently well juſted, without ſparing or doing themſelves any damage. The earl wiſhed to break another lance in honour of his lady, but it was refuſed him. He then quitted the liſts, to make room for others, for he had run his ſix lances with ſuch ability and courage as gained him praiſe from all ſides.

A young and gallant knight of England next came forth, called the earl-marſhal*, who ſent, according to the regulations, to touch the war-target of ſir Reginald de Roye. This being done, ſir Reginald came from his pavilion completely armed, and mounted his horſe that was ready for him: having had his ſhield and helmet buckled on, he ſeized his lance and took his diſtance. The two knights ſpurred their horſes, but, at this firſt courſe, failed in their ſtrokes, from their horſes ſwerving out of the line, to their great vexation. Sir Reginald was hit with the ſecond lance, and had his own broken. At the third courſe, they met with ſuch force that the fire ſparkled from their helmets, and the earl was unhelmed. He continued his career to his own place, but juſted no more that day, as he had done ſufficiently.

The lord Clifford†, a valiant knight, and couſin-german to the late ſir John Chandos, of famed

---

* I ſuppoſe this muſt be Thomas Mowbray, earl of Nottingham and earl-marſhal: he was afterwards created duke of Norfolk. See Dugdale.

† Froiſſart calls him ſir Louis de Clifford, but he was Thomas lord Clifford of Cumberland. See Dugdale.

renown,

renown, then advanced, and ſent to have the war ſhield of ſir Boucicaut touched with a rod. Sir Boucicaut inſtantly appeared, and, having his armour laced, mounted his horſe: placing his lance in its reſt, they met full gallop, and made, by their blows, the fire fly from their helmets, but they neither broke their lances nor loſt their ſtirrups: having paſſed, they returned to their places, making ready for the ſecond courſe. This was done without any way ſparing themſelves: ſir Boucicaut broke his lance and was unhelmed, but did not for this fall to the ground. Lord Clifford returned to his place, to prepare himſelf for another courſe, but ſir Boucicaut did not again put on his helmet. Lord Clifford, noticing this, reſolved to perform a tilt with another knight, and ſent his ſquire to touch the ſhield of the lord de Saimpi.

The lord de Saimpi being ready, ſallied forth from his pavilion: they ran at each other with great force, met full, and lord Clifford broke his lance into three pieces againſt the target of his adverſary. In return, the lord de Saimpi ſtruck off his helmet, and both continued their career to their places. The lord Clifford tilted no more that day, for the ſpectators ſaid he had honourably and valorouſly borne himſelf.

Sir Henry Beaumont* then came forward, and ſent to have the target of ſir Boucicaut touched, who was inſtantly ready to reply to the call,

* Lord Beaumont. See Dugdale.

having

having not diſmounted from the tilts with lord Clifford. The lord Beaumont did not manage his lance well, and hit Boucicaut on the ſide; but ſir Boucicaut ſtruck him ſo full on the middle of his ſhield, that he drove him to the ground, and continued his courſe. Lord Beaumont was raiſed up by his attendants and remounted. The lord de Saimpi then preſented himſelf, and they tilted two courſes very handſomely without hurt to either.

Sir Peter Courteney, who was anxious to engage and to run ſix lances, ſent a ſquire to touch with a rod the three ſhields of war. This cauſed a good deal of ſurpriſe, and he was aſked what were his intentions by ſo doing. He replied, that he wiſhed to tilt with each of the French knights two lances, if no misfortune befel him, and he entreated they would comply with his requeſt. They were ready to conſent to it, and ſir Reginald de Roye firſt offered himſelf. Having made themſelves ready, they ſpurred their horſe, and took good aim not to miſs their ſtroke; but, from the reſtiveneſs of their horſes, they failed. They were much vexed, and returned to their places. On the ſecond courſe, they met full gallop; and ſir Reginald de Roye, having unhelmed his adverſary, returned gently towards his pavilion, his two courſes being completed. Sir Peter Courteney being armed once more, the lord de Saimpi advanced, and their lances were broken at the firſt ſhock: they continued their courſe, when new lances were given them. They advanced towards each other furiouſly, and the

lord

lord de Saimpi hit ſir Peter, whoſe horſe ſwerved a little; but ſir Peter ſtruck off his helmet, and rode on at a gentle pace to his poſt.

Sir Boucicaut now came to complete the two other courſes; and, at their onſet they ſtruck each on the ſhield ſo rudely that the two horſes were ſuddenly checked in their career: no other damage enſued. At the ſecond courſe, they were both unhelmed. When theſe ſix tilts were done, ſir Peter requeſted, as a favour, to run one more, vith any of the three knights who pleaſed, but it vas refuſed; and he was told, that he had done ough that day.

An Engliſh knight, called Sir John Gouloufre, came forth, armed from head to foot, and ſent his ſquire to touch the war-ſhield of ſir Reginald de Loye. The knight obeyed the ſummons, and both advanced full gallop. They hit each other's helmets, but were neither unhelmed nor had their lances broken. Their horſes refuſed to run the ſcond courſe, to their great vexation. At the tird tilt they ſtruck their ſhields and broke their lances. They were ſupplied with others, and, fom the ſwerving of their horſes, paſſed their furth career without ſtriking a blow. The fifth lace was too well employed, for they were both uhelmed, and then each rode to his own party.

Sir John Rouſſeau*, an expert and valiant knight frm England, but well known for his proweſs in

*He is called before Rouſſel. In the MS. in the Britiſh Muum, Rouſſel.

various

various countries, ordered his ſquire to touch the ſhield of the lord de Salmpi, who was already armed and mounted. On receiving his lance, he ſpurred his horſe againſt the Engliſh knight, and the ſhock of their ſpears againſt the targets inſtantly forced them to ſtop. Each returned to his poſt, and it was not long before they commenced their ſecond courſe with equal vigour: but when near, the horſes ſwerved, which prevented their ſtroke. To their ſorrow, they were thus obliged to return again to the end of the liſts. They were more ſucceſsful the third courſe; for they ſtruck each other with ſuch force, that the vizors of their helmets were broken off: the knights continued their career, and the Engliſhman tilted no more that day.

Sir Peter Shirborne, a young knight, but of good courage, ſent his ſquire to touch the warſhield of ſir Boucicaut. The knight was ready to anſwer him, for he was armed and on horſeback leaning on his ſpear to wait for an adventure. Perceiving himſelf called upon, he raiſed his ſpear, and looked to ſee what his adverſary was about, and, obſerving that he was handling his horſe, did the ſame. When they began their courſe, they couched their ſpears, thinking to make ſure blows; but they were diſappointed, to their great vexation, by the ſwerving of their horſes, which forced them to return to their poſts. They determined to manage them better at their ſecond tilt, and ſpurred them both ſo vigorouſly, they each ſtruck

the other on the vizor. Sir Boucicaut broke his lance, but not ſo the Engliſh knight; for he employed it with ſuch force that he not only unhelmed, but made the blood ſpout from his noſe as he bore off the helmet of ſir Boucicaut, who then retired to his pavilion: he tilted no more that day, for it was now nearly veſpers. Sir Peter Shirborne, however, would not deſiſt, until he had completed his number of lances: he, in conſequence, ſent his ſquire to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who was prepared to meet him. The two knights ſpurred on violently againſt each other, and hit on the top of their helmets; but the lances ſlipt over, and they paſſed each other without hurt. The ſpectators ſaid, had their ſpears been pointed lower, and the ſhields received the blows, one or both muſt have ſuffered ſeverely from the ſhock. The next courſe they ſtruck full on the targets, and broke their lances into three parts; but the blow of the lord de Saimpi was ſo ſtrong that the Engliſh knight loſt his ſeat and fell on the ground, from whence, however, he inſtantly aroſe, and was led by his attendants from the liſts.

The lord de Saimpi returned to his poſt, viewing the ſtate of his adverſary, and ſhewing his willingneſs to renew the tilt with him he had overthrown or with any other; but none came forward, as it was now time to leave off for this day, and return to their hôtels. The Engliſh and ſuch as had accompanied them, ſet off full gallop for Calais,

Calais, where they remained that night enjoying themſelves, and talking over the feats of arms that had been performed.

The French retired to Saint Inglevere; and, if the Engliſh talked much of what had been done, you may readily ſuppoſe the French were not ſilent.

On Tueſday, after maſs and drinking a cup, all thoſe who intended to tilt, and thoſe who wiſhed to ſee them, left Calais, and rode in an orderly manner to where the liſts had been held the preceding day. The French were already there, as was right, and prepared to receive them. The day was bright, clear, and ſufficiently warm. The Engliſh drew up on one ſide, and armed thoſe who were to tilt.

Sir William Clifton, a very valiant and expert knight, was the firſt who ſent his ſquire to touch the ſhield of ſir Boucicaut: the knight inſtantly came forth, armed completely for the tournament, mounted his horſe, and graſped his lance. The two knights met full gallop, hitting each on the target, but paſſed on without any thing more. The ſecond courſe was very handſome: they met, and hit each on the helmet, the lances croſſing. The third courſe they ſtruck again their ſhields, and with ſuch violence that the horſes were ſtopped. The fourth courſe with lances was gallantly performed, for they hit each other ſo ſtrongly on the vizors of their helmets, they were driven off by the blow to different ſides. The Engliſh knight

tilted no more that day, for he was told he had done enough.

After this, ſir Nicholas Clinton, a young Engliſh knight, ſent to touch the target of the lord de Saimpi, who immediately appeared ready armed and mounted. The two knights ſpurred their horſes, bearing their ſpears in good array: when near, they ſtruck their opponent's target with ſuch violence that the ſteel remained fixed; and it is wonderful no other harm enſued, for they were both young, of good courage, and did not ſpare themſelves. They neither fell nor were wounded, but their lances were ſhivered to pieces. They then paſſed on, each to his poſt. The ſecond courſe was well tilted: they ſtruck each on the helmets, but, as it was on the top, they did no damage, and paſſed on. At the third courſe with lances, the horſes ſwerved, to their ſorrow; and, at the fourth, the lord de Saimpi unhelmed the Engliſh knight, who returned to his countrymen, and tilted no more, for they aſſured him he had behaved moſt valiantly, and that he muſt allow others to have their ſhare.

When ſir Nicholas Clinton was returned from the liſts, a gallant knight of England, nearly related to the earl of Huntingdon, called William Stamart, left his tent, and ſent to touch the target of ſir Reginald de Roye, who appeared to meet him. Each having taken his poſt, they vigorouſly ſpurred their horſes, and gave ſuch blows on their ſhields, that it was ſurpriſing they were not unhorſed;

horſed; but both kept their ſeats, as they rode well. They paſſed on to their places; but the Engliſh knight let fall his lance, and ſir Reginald bore his in handſome array.

The Engliſh knight having had his lance given to him, he placed it in its reſt, and, ſpurring his horſe, intended to have done wonders. Indeed the blow would have been good if it had been ſtraight, but, by the ſwerving of his horſe, it was very weak; and I doubt if it were not, in ſome meaſure, the fault of the knight. Sir Reginald ſtruck him ſuch a blow on the ſhield as made him bend backward, but they paſſed on without further hurt. Being prepared for the third courſe, they again ſpurred their horſes and couched their lances, and hit each other ſo rudely on the helmets that the fire ſparkled from them. They paſſed on, but from this blow their lances fell to the ground: perſons were at hand to pick them up and give them to the knights. Having replaced the lances in their reſts, they renewed the tilt, and, aiming well, ſtruck each other on the vizors of their helmets ſo ſeverely, that ſir William Stamart was unhelmed and nearly thrown to the ground, but, though he ſtaggered, he kept his ſeat. The Engliſh knight then went to his countrymen, and did nothing more that day.

A ſquire called Lancaſter now ſtepped forth, and ſent to touch the ſhield of ſir Boucicaut. He was ready mounted to anſwer the call, and, having graſped his ſpear, they met moſt courageouſly: they ſtruck their helmets, ſo as to make the fire

fly from them, and it was aſtoniſhing they kept them on their heads. No harm being done, each returned to his poſt, where they made no long ſtay before they began their ſecond courſe with great vigour, each hitting on his opponent's target: the horſes ſwerved, which prevented this from being a handſome or effectual tilt, but this they could not help. At the third lance they met, and the blow was ſo well placed, that the Engliſhman was unhelmed, and paſſed on to his poſt bare-headed all but the ſcull-cap, and would not that day tilt more.

A young knight, whoſe name was ſir John Tallboys, next made his appearance, completely armed, and ſent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi. That knight was ready for the tilt, and, having graſped his ſpear, ſtuck ſpurs into his horſe: their firſt onſet was ſo rough, their lances were ſhivered. The two knights paſſed each other without other damage, and were not long before they began their ſecond courſe, having received new lances, of which there was a proviſion ready, all of the ſame length. From the fault of their horſes, though they aimed well, they miſſed hitting; but the third courſe was well performed, for they unhelmed each other, and then each retired to his own party, and the Engliſh knight did nothing more that day.

Sir Godfrey de Seca next preſented himſelf: he was a gallant knight, and ſhewed, by his manner of riding and bearing his lance, that he was an able tilter, and deſirous of renown. He ſent his

ſquire

ſquire to touch the war-target of ſir Reginald de Roye. That knight came forward inſtantly, as he was ready mounted, and, placing himſelf properly for the tilt, they both ſet off full gallop, and gave ſuch blows on their targets, that though their ſpears, from their ſtrength, did not break, they remained faſtened to the ſhields, and, by dint of hard puſhing, the horſes were checked: each knight returned to his poſt without loſing his lance, but bearing it handſomely before him. Having placed them in their reſts they again ſpurred their horſes, which were ſtrong and active, but by their ſwerving they miſſed their ſtroke and dropped their ſpears. Thoſe near picked them up and returned them, and again they renewed the tilt; for they were heated, and ſeemed unwilling to ſpare each other.

The Engliſh knight hit ſir Reginald a very ſevere blow on the top of his helmet, without otherwiſe damaging him; but ſir Reginald gave him ſo ſtrong a thruſt on the target, (for at that time he was counted one of the ſtouteſt tilters in France, and was ſmitten with love for a young lady, that made all his affairs proſper) it pierced throught it as well as his left arm: the ſpear broke as it entered, the butt end falling to the ground, the other ſticking in the ſhield, and the ſteel in the arm. The knight, however, did not for this fail to finiſh his courſe gallantly; but his companions came to him, and the broken ſpear and ſteel were extracted, the blood ſtaunched, and the arm tied up. Sir Reginald returned to his

friends, and there remained, leaning on another lance that had been given him. Sir Reginald was much praiſed by the French and Engliſh for this tilt; and no one ſaid any thing improper againſt him, on account of the Engliſhman being wounded, for ſuch are the events of arms: to one they are fortunate, to another the reverſe; and, to ſay the truth, they did not ſpare each other.

An Engliſh ſquire, called Blaquet*, then ſent to ſtrike the war-ſhield of the lord de Saimpi. When they were both ready, they ſpurred their horſes, and hit on the helmets hard blows, though the points of their ſpears ſlipped off: on finiſhing their career they loſt their lances. When they were reſtored to them, they began their ſecond courſe, but, by the fault of their horſes, nothing was done. At the third onſet, Blaquet gave the lord de Saimpi a hard blow on the helmet, but was ſtruck by him much harder on the vizor, and unhelmed, with a force that broke the buckle which faſtened it behind, and it fell on the ground. They finiſhed their courſe, and the Engliſh ſquire went among his countrymen, not intending to tilt more that day. The lord de Saimpi remained gallantly on horſeback, leaning on his ſpear, to wait until he ſhould be again called upon.

Sir John Bolcas, a gallant knight from England, ſhortly after this tilt was over, ſent his ſquire to touch the ſhield of the lord de Saimpi, who, being prepared, entered the liſts, his target on his neck

* Blaquet. Q. Blake.

and

and ſpear in hand. Each hit his adverſary's ſhield, and it was ſurpriſing they were not pierced, for their lances were ſtrong, and their heads well tempered; but they paſſed without further loſs than of their ſpears, which fell to the ground. When they were picked up and given them, they again ſpurred their horſes, and ſtruck the helmets, but without effect, and continued their career. At the third courſe, their horſes croſſed. The lord de Saimpi, at the fourth, unhelmed ſir John Bolcas, by a hard blow, and then the two knights returned to their friends.

Thomelin Meſſidon*, a young Engliſh knight, well and richly armed, with a great deſire to gain honour, ſent to touch the ſhield of ſir Boucicaut. The knight inſtantly came forth, and, having graſped his lance, both ſpurred their horſes; and each made his ſtroke by croſſing under the helmet: they paſſed on without hurt or blame, but were not long before they ſpurred on again. In this courſe, they hit very roughly on the targets; Thomelin Meſſidon ſhivered his lance; but ſir Boucicaut's blow was ſo ſevere, it drove his opponent over the crupper of his horſe to the ground. Thoſe of his party ran to raiſe him up, and carried him off, for he tilted no more that day.

Another ſquire of England called Navarton, inſtantly ſtepped forth, and ſent to touch the war-ſhield of ſir Boucicaut, ſaying he would revenge

* Thomelin Meſſidon. It is Meſſiden in the MSS.

his

his companion, whom he had ſtruck to the ground in his preſence. Boucicaut was ready to anſwer him, being armed and mounted, and leaning on his ſpear. They met full gallop, and hit each other on the vizors of their helmets, but paſſed on without other damage. Having had their helmets re-adjuſted, and their lances given them, they again met with great violence, and from the ſhock of the blows on their targets the horſes were ſtopped, and the lances broken into three pieces, but they completed their courſe without any hurt. They had new ſpears given them; and at the third courſe ſir Boucicaut was hit hard on the target, but he gave Navarton a blow that unhelmed him: he then withdrew to his countrymen, and titled no more that day; for they ſaid he had done ſufficient, and had gained great applauſe.

After this, another ſquire advanced, called Sequaqueton*, an able man at arms and expert tilter. He ſent to touch the ſhield of ſir Reginald de Roye, who replied, that he was prepared and mounted. They ſpurred their horſes, and gave violent ſtrokes on their targets, without ſparing each other. Sequaqueton bore himſelf handſomely without falling, to the ſurpriſe of the ſpectators, for ſir Reginald's blow made him bend backward almoſt on the crupper of his horſe; but he raiſed himſelf, and gallantly finiſhed his career with the loſs only of his lance. Having received another, they ran

* Sequaqueton. Q. Swinnerton.

the

the ſecond tilt with great courage, and ſtruck ſuch blows on their helmets as made the fire fly from them. It was a handſome courſe, and no damage done. They repaired to their poſts, and ſpurred again for the third time. In this tilt, Sequaqueton was ſeverely unhelmed, and on the point of falling, both himſelf and horſe, for he ſtaggered conſiderably. The ſquire, when on his feet, returned to his companions and tilted no more: indeed, there was an end to the whole for the day, as it was now late. The Engliſh collected together, and returned to Calais, as did the French to Saint Inglevere.

You muſt know, though I have not before made mention of it, that king Charles of France was preſent at theſe juſts. Being young, and deſirous of witneſſing extraordinary ſights, he would have been much vexed if he had not ſeen theſe tournaments. He was therefore preſent at the early part and latter end of them, attended only by the lord de Garencieres; but both ſo diſguiſed that nobody knew of it; and they returned every evening to Marquiſe*.

The enſuing day, Wedneſday, was as fine as the foregoing; and the Engliſh, who had croſſed the ſea to take part in or view this tournament, mounted their horſes, at the ſame hour as on the preceding day, and rode to the place appointed for the liſts, to the delight of the French, who

* Marquiſe,—a town in Picardy, five leagues from Calais, three and 1-half from Boulogne.

were

were rejoiced to ſee them. It was not long after their arrival when an Engliſh ſquire, a good tilter, called John Savage, ſquire of honour and of the body to the earl of Huntingdon, ſent to touch the ſhield of ſir Reginald de Roye. The knight anſwered, he was ready and willing to ſatisfy him.

When he had mounted his horſe, and had his helmet buckled and lance given to him, they ſet off full gallop, and gave ſuch blows on the targets, that had the ſpears not broken, one or both muſt have fallen to the ground. This courſe was handſome and dangerous; but the knights received no hurt, though the points of the lances paſſed through the targets, and ſlipped off their ſide-armour. The ſpears were broken about a foot from the ſhaft, the points remaining in the ſhields; and they gallantly bore the ſhafts before them, as they finiſhed their career. The ſpectators thought they muſt have been ſeriouſly wounded; and the French and Engliſh haſtened each to their companion, whom, to their joy, they found unhurt. They were told they had done enough for that day; but John Savage was not ſatisfied, and ſaid he had not croſſed the ſea for only one tilt with a lance. This was reported to ſir Reginald, who replied,—'He is in the right; and it is but juſt that he ſhould be gratified, either by me or by one of my companions.'

When they had reſted themſelves a while, and received new lances, they began their ſecond courſe, each aiming well at the other; but they failed, from the ſwerving of their horſes, to their great

great vexation, and returned to their poſts. Their lances, which they had accidentally dropped, were given to them, and they ſet off on their third courſe. This time they hit on the vizors of their helmets; and, by the force and croſſing of their lances, both were unhelmed as they paſſed. The tilt was much applauded for its correctneſs and vigour. When they were returned to their poſts, the Engliſh told John Savage, that he had very honourably performed, and that it was now time for him to make way for others to tilt as well as himſelf. He complied with this, and, laying aſide his lance and target, diſmounted, and rode on a hackney to witneſs the performances of others.

An Engliſh ſquire, named William Baſquenay, couſin to the earl-marſhal, came forth fully armed for the occaſion, and ſent to have the war-ſhield of ſir Boucicaut ſtricken. The knight inſtantly made his appearance at the end of the liſts, and each galloped towards the other as ſtraight as they could. They ſtruck their helmets gallantly; and the blow was ſo effectual on the vizors that they were both unhelmed, and continued their courſe without further hurt. Their friends who were near re-adjuſted their armours; and, giving them their ſpears, they commenced their ſecond courſe by deſperate ſtrokes on their targets; but, the lances breaking, no harm was done, and they continued their career. They were ſupplied with new lances, that were ſtout and good; but, from the fault of their horſes, they miſſed their ſtrokes. At the fourth lance, they hit; and William Baſque-

nay

nay was unhelmed a ſecond time, and then returned to his companions, not tilting more that day.

A ſquire from England, whoſe name was John Scot, ſent to have the war-ſhield of the lord de Saimpi touched. He immediately appeared, and at their onſet they gave ſuch blows on their targets as ſtopped their horſes; but, their lances being ſtrong, they neither broke nor fell out of their hands. The ſecond courſe was well performed: the lord de Saimpi hit his adverſary; but Scot had more ſucceſs in unhelming him, for which he was much applauded by his countrymen.

The lord de Saimpi was ſoon re-helmed; and, graſping his ſpear, they ſpurred againſt each other with great violence. They placed their blows on their targets, but with a force that drove John Scot out of his ſaddle to the ground, and thus did the lord de Saimpi revenge himſelf. The ſquire was raiſed, and carried off by his companions.

Bernard Stapleton, an Engliſh ſquire, ſent to ſtrike the lord de Saimpi's ſhield, who was not diſmounted from his laſt tilt. They met, and hit each other on the helmets ſo forcibly as to make the ſparks fly from them; but they paſſed on without hurt and returned to their poſts. Still graſping their ſpears, they couched them, and at this ſecond courſe ſtruck very ſevere blows on their targets, but kept their ſeats well, without falling or ſtaggering, to the end of their career. The third lance ſtruck the helmets, and both were unhelmed. The Engliſh ſquire returned from

from the liſts, as his friends told him he had acquitted himſelf with honour.

The next that preſented himſelf was a young gay knight from England, who ſhone in tournaments, in dancing and in ſinging, called Sir John Arundel. He ſent his ſquire to touch the war-ſhield of ſir Reginald de Roye. The knight replied, that he wiſhed for nothing more agreeable than to tilt with him. Having received their ſpears, they galloped off at the ſame moment, and gave and received hard blows on their ſhields; but they kept their ſeats handſomely, and continued their career. Their lances having fallen from their hands, were reſtored to them by thoſe appointed for that purpoſe; and they began their ſecond courſe with blows on the helmets that made the fire fly, but they paſſed on without further hurt. At the third onſet, the horſes ſwerved; and the knights, in their attempt to ſtrike, loſt their lances, and with difficulty recovered themſelves. At the fourth, they ſtruck the helmets, but without harm or unhelming. At the fifth courſe, they hit each other on the targets, and broke their lances, without any other damage. Sir John Arundel completed his career, and returned to his friends.

After this, Nicholas Stone, an Engliſh ſquire, ſent to touch the war-ſhield of ſir Boucicaut. The knight ſeizing his lance, they ſpurred againſt each other and hit on the helmets; but the ſpears ſlipped off, and they paſſed unhurt. Holding ſtill their

their lances in the reſts, they ſet off again, and hit ſo hard on the targets, that the horſes ſtaggered with the ſhock, and the knights dropped their ſpears. When they had received their lances, they again galloped off full ſpeed, and their blows on the helmets were effectual: at leaſt the Engliſh ſquire loſt his helmet and retired, for his friends ſaid he had done enough.

Another ſquire from England, called John Marſhal, advanced to the liſts, completely armed, and ſent to touch the war-target of ſir Boucicaut, who replied, he was ready, and waiting to be called upon. At their firſt courſe they hit each other on the targets, but the lances fell to the ground, and they returned to their ſtations without other damage. On their being reſtored, they continued their tilt, and ſtruck hard blows on the helmets without any thing more, and purſued their career, bearing their lances handſomely before them. When they had reſted a little, they conſidered how they could beſt annoy each other, and, having aimed well, ſpurred on their horſes. John Marſhal gave ſuch a thruſt on Boucicaut's ſhield, that his lance was broken to the ſtump, and Boucicaut's blow unhelmed his opponent, and drove him on the crupper of his horſe. The ſquire, notwithſtanding, completed his courſe without falling, and then went to his companions, who ſaid he ought now to be ſatisfied, for that he had well performed.

When the ſquire had withdrawn, a young and

friſky Engliſh knight advanced, who was eager to gain renown. His name was ſir John Cliſeton *, and he bore for arms a field argent, fretted azure, with a mullet argent in chief. He ſent his ſquire to touch the war-ſhield of ſir Reginald de Roye, who was much pleaſed at the ſummons. Having taken their ſtations and received their lances, they ſpurred their horſes and hit each other full on the helmets, but paſſed and completed their career. They kept their lances in the reſts, and were not long before they commenced the ſecond courſe, in which they gave heavy thruſts on their ſhields, but without any loſs, except of their ſpears, which fell to the ground. Having received their lances, they hit each other, on the third courſe, ſuch blows on the tops of the helmets as made the fire fly. At the fourth courſe their horſes ſwerved, to their great diſappointment. The fifth was well performed, for each broke his lance. The two knights grew warm, and plainly ſhewed they were deſirous of trying each other's valour to the utmoſt. When at their ſtations they had freſh lances given them, that were ſtiff enough; and, after a ſhort delay, they again ſpurred their horſes, and laid in ſuch blows on the helmets that both were unhelmed. This courſe was greatly praiſed by all preſent, and when they had completed their career, they returned to their countrymen; for the Engliſh knight tilted no more that day.

When this was finiſhed, a ſquire from England,

* Sir John Cliſeton. Q. Clifton.

called Roger Leau *, whoſe arms were a croſs gules, on a field argent and ſable quartered, came forward, handſomely equipped, and gaily ſent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi. The knight inſtantly obeyed the call, and by his alacrity ſhewed he preferred tilting to remaining idle. On the firſt onſet, they checked their horſes, by the force of their blows on their ſhields; but the lances, being ſtrong, did not break, and they continued their courſe. On the ſecond tilt, they hit the helmets hard enough; but, as the points of their lances grazed off, no harm was done. Roger Leau was unhelmed at the third courſe, and returned to his countrymen without doing more that day.

After this a gallant knight, from that part of Hainault called Oſtrevant, a good man at arms and able tilter, offered himſelf. He had been educated in England at the court of king Edward, and his name was ſir John d'Ambreticourt, and brother to that excellent knight, ſir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt. He bore for his arms ermine two bars humetty gules, each charged with three eſcallop ſhells argent.

The knight was well equipped for the tournament, and ſent one of his ſquires to touch the war-target of ſir Reginald de Roye. Having taken their ſtations, they eyed each other well, and, ſpurring their horſes, gave ſuch blows on the ſhields as made ſparks of fire fly from them, and

* Roger Leau. Q. Low.

the

the horſes to bend under them. The tilt was handſome, for no harm was done, and they continued the career. They were not long before they ran their ſecond courſe, and again hit on the ſhields. It was wonderful that this was not attended with miſchief, for they were both ſtrong and courageous tilters, fearleſs of death or danger. The ſhock of this attack was ſo great that their horſes were forced on their haunches, and the two knights ſtaggered. Nevertheleſs they continued their career, but with the loſs of their lances.

Having received their lances, they ran their third courſe, and ſir John d'Ambreticourt unhelmed ſir Reginald de Roye ſo as to injure him very conſiderably, and to terminate his career. Sir Reginald went to his party, and plainly ſhewed he would not tilt more that day. When ſir John d'Ambreticourt perceived this, as he had a great delight in tilting, he ſent to touch the war-ſhield of ſir Boucicaut, who inſtantly advanced to the liſts. Having had his target buckled on, and placed his ſpear in the reſt, they ſpurred againſt each other, and gave ſuch blows on the ſhield that it was ſurpriſing they were not piereed through; but this might be owing to the ſwerving of the horſes.

When returned to their ſtations, they did not remain long before they commenced their ſecond courſe with vigour, and hit each other hard on the helmets; but the ſpears ſlipped off, and they continued their career. The knights having loſt their ſpears, they were brought to them by their ſquires,

and they renewed the tilt. This time they were both very ſeverely unhelmed, and gallantly finiſhed their courſe.

The Engliſh now collected together, as evening was approaching, and returned to Calais, where they paſſed the night in talking over the different feats of arms that had been that day performed. The French amuſed themſelves in like manner at Saint Inglevere. On Thurſday morning, the fourth day of the tournament, the Engliſh found that there were yet many knights and ſquires who had not entered the liſts, and who had purpoſely come from England: they therefore ſaid, that all who had any intentions to tilt ſhould do ſo, otherwiſe they would not be handſomely treated. The lords of England had agreed to return to Saint Inglevere on the Thurſday, for thoſe who pleaſed to perform their juſts: in conſequence, they left Calais after maſs, and, on arriving at the liſts, found the three French knights ready in their pavilions to anſwer all who might call on them, attended by thoſe that were to ſerve them, and ſuch as came to witneſs the deeds of arms.

An Engliſh knight, called ſir Godfrey d'Eſtas *, was the firſt who entered the liſts: he bore for arms a lion ſable on a field or, with three bars gules, and charged with a mullet or, on the dexter paw of a lion, and was completely and gaily armed. He ſent a ſquire to touch the war-ſhield of

* Sir Godfrey d'Eſtas. Q. Euſtace.

ſir Boucicaut, who inſtantly advanced from his pavilion prepared to obey the ſummons.

Having received their ſpears and bucklers, and eyed each other for a ſhort time, they ſpurred on their horſes, and both ſtruck violent blows on the helmets; but, as the points of the lances ſlipped off, they continued their courſe to their ſtations. Keeping the lances in the reſts, they recommenced the tilt, and met with ſuch force on their bucklers, that had not their ſpears broken, much miſchief might have enſued. When they had reſted a while and had new lances, they ran a third courſe with great violence, and hit the vizors ſo fairly and well that both were unhelmed: they continued their career, and then retired to their own people. The Engliſh knight did nothing more this day, for he was told that he had performed well, and muſt give way to others.

Alain Bourch *, an able and expert Engliſh ſquire, ſent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who came from his pavilion in obedience to the call. They gave blows on their helmets, at the firſt onſet, that made the fire ſparkle, but no other harm was done. At the ſecond tilt, their lances met on their bucklers with ſuch force as ſhivered them in pieces, but they continued their career unhurt. They were quickly ſupplied with new lances; and, ſpurring on the third time, they placed their thruſts ſo well and ſtrong that they

* Alain Bourch. Q. Birch. Lord Berners calls him Alayne Borowe.

were

were both unhelmed, and completed their courſe: the Engliſhman retired to his countrymen, to allow others to ſhew their ſkill and valour.

An Engliſh ſquire, called John Storp *, ſent to touch the target of ſir Boucicaut, who iſſued forth out of his pavilion, and, his horſe being ready, mounted him, and entered the liſts. They failed in their firſt courſe, from the fault of their horſes. When returned to their ſtations, they were not long before they ran the ſecond; and, although they gave each other ſevere blows on the helmet, no miſchief enſued. At the third courſe, John Scrope was forcibly ſtruck to the ground; whence he was raiſed by his friends, and did no more that day.

A Bohemian knight now advanced, who was of the houſehold of the queen of England, called ſir Herchauce. He was eſteemed a ſtrong and expert tilter, and bore for his arms three griffin's feet ſable on a ſhield argent onglé with azure.

When he entered the liſts, he was aſked which of the three knights he wiſhed to tilt with: he replied, 'With Boucicaut.' On this, an Engliſh ſquire was ſent, according to the regulations, to touch ſir Boucicaut's war-target. The knight, having kept himſelf prepared for any ſummons, left his pavilion, and, having faſtened his buckler and graſped his lance, entered the liſts. His opponent was then ready to meet him; and, ſpurring their horſes, they thought to give full ſtrokes;

* John Storp. Lord Berners—Scrope.

but

but it was not ſo, from the ill conduct of the Bohemian knight, for which he was greatly blamed. He had, out of the line of tilting, hit ſir Boucicaut on the helmet, and continued his career: for this impropriety, of which the Engliſh ſaw him guilty, he had forfeited his arms and horſe, ſhould the French inſiſt upon them. The French and Engliſh held a long converſation on this ill-placed ſtroke; but at laſt, the French knights pardoned it, the better to pleaſe the Engliſh.

Herchauce begged as a favour that he might be permitted to run only one courſe more. On being aſked, 'With which of the three knights?' he ſent to touch the target of ſir Reginald de Roye. That knight was waiting in his pavilion, not having tilted that day, and declared his willingneſs to accommodate ſir Herchauce, ſince his requeſt had been granted.

Sir Reginald mounted his horſe, and having had his buckler faſtened, and his lance given him, he eyed his opponent, that he might well point his ſtroke. Both ſpurred their horſes at the ſame moment, and hit on the ſhields; but ſir Reginald (who was one of the firmeſt and beſt tilters in France) thruſt with ſuch force as made the Bohemian fly out of his ſaddle, and fall ſo ſeverely on the ground that the ſpectators imagined he was killed. Sir Reginald continued his courſe to his own ſtation.

Sir Herchauce was raiſed with much difficulty by his attendants, and carried to the Engliſh, who were well pleaſed at what had happened to him,

for the uncourteous manner in which he had run his firſt courſe. He had not any deſire to tilt more that day.

The next who came forward was Robin Scorne-borne*, an able and gay ſquire from England. He ſent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who was ready mounted and prepared to anſwer him. At their firſt courſe they hit their helmets, and continued their career. At the next, they ſtruck their bucklers, but unſucceſsfully, as before, excepting the loſs of their lances. Having received them again, they, on the third onſet, placed their thruſts ſo ably and forcibly on the vizors, that both were unhelmed, and finiſhed their courſe. The Engliſh ſquire returned to his companions, and was idle during the rest of the day.

Another Engliſh ſquire, called John Merlan, now advanced. He bore for arms a bend ſable on a field argent, charged with three lion-heads ſable, and ſent to touch the war-target of ſir Reginald de Roye. The knight anſwered, he was at his ſervice. Having entered the liſts, they at the firſt onſet gave violent blows on the helmets, but without any effect, and, by firmly holding their lances, returned to their ſtations without loſs of any kind. The ſecond courſe, their ſpears met on their bucklers, and the horſes were checked; having thrown down their lances, they continued their career, each to his ſtation, and made ready to tilt well the

* Robin Scorneborne. Q. Sherburn, or Shirburn.

third

third lance. When their ſpears had been given them, they ſet off full gallop, and ſir Reginald hit John Merlan a blow on his buckler, which forced him out of the ſaddle to the ground. He continued his courſe to his ſtation, and the Engliſhman was raiſed and carried to his countrymen.

John Mouton, another ſquire from England, next offered himſelf. He bore for arms a chevron ſable on a field gules, three pierced mullets or, with an indented bordure ſable, and ſent to ſtrike the war-ſhield of ſir Boucicaut, who replied, he was always ready to tilt. Their firſt ſtrokes met on their bucklers, but without damage. It was not their fault, for the blows were well placed, and they gallantly paſſed, bearing their lances before them, to their ſtations. They were not long before they commenced their ſecond tilt, and hit very ſeverely on the helmets, but without loſs, excepting their lances, and returned to their poſts. Thoſe who were appointed to gather the lances that fell, inſtantly preſented them to the knights, who renewed the tilt; but at this third courſe ſir Boucicaut unhelmed John Mouton, who retired to his companions.

A very handſome knight from England now came forth: he was well armed at all points, and kept an excellent poſition on his horſe, and was called ſir Jaquemin Strop *. He ſent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who, being mounted and armed before his pavilion, advanced

* Sir Jaquemin Strop. Q. Sir James Scrope.

to

to the lists. At their first course, they missed their stroke, from their horses running out of the line, which vexed them much. They were not long before they again set off, full gallop, and, when they met, gave such blows on the helmets as made them strike fire: they passed on without loss but of their spears. As soon as they were returned to their stations, their lances were brought them, and, after a short delay, they began their third course. They both hit with great force on the bucklers; but sir James Scrope's lance broke, while sir Reginald unhorsed his opponent and continued his career. Sir James was raised from the ground by his attendants, and did no more that day.

Another English knight, called sir William Masquelee, was ready to enter the lists, and to engage with whoever pleased; for he had crossed the sea with the earl of Huntingdon in this view. He sent to touch the war-target of sir Boucicaut, who had his buckler fastened, and instantly advanced to meet his adversary. They both at the same moment spurred their horses, which were fresh and eager to begin the course; for, the very instant they felt the points, they bounded forward. The two knights took good aim, and mutually gave such strokes on their helmets that fire sparkled from them; and, though the points of the lances flipped off, the tilt was much praised by all present. They continued their career to their different stations, but did not make any long stay before they again spurred their horses and couched their spears, for they did not drop them, and met with such violence,

lence, that their lances muſt have pierced the bucklers, if the horſes had not ſwerved. They finiſhed their courſe, throwing down their lances, and completed their career like good tilters, in excellent array to their poſts. Having received their ſpears, they ſet off as faſt as their horſes could carry them, and, on their meeting, hit the vizors of the helmets ſeverely. The tilt was loudly applauded; for they were both unhelmed, and bare-headed all but the ſcull-caps: they finiſhed their career, and then returned to their friends, for they had excellently performed.

An Engliſh ſquire, called Nicholas Leau*, well and elegantly armed, advanced, having a great deſire to try his ſkill in arms. He ſent to ſtrike the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who was already mounted and armed, in front of his pavilion, with his buckler on his breaſt, blazoned with his arms. He graſped his ſpear, and flew to the liſts with the eagerneſs of a hawk to ſeize his prey. The Engliſh ſquire did the ſame, and, ſetting off at full ſpeed, they gave ſuch blows on their bucklers, that their lances were ſhivered: it was fortunate they broke, or the knights muſt have been greatly hurt, or unhorſed, but they kept their ſeats firmly. When returned to their ſtations, they were ſupplied with new lances, and with them, at the ſecond courſe, made the fire fly from their helmets: no other damage was done, for the ſpears had croſſed, and they continued their career to their

* Nicholas Leau. Q. Low.

poſts.

poſts. After a ſhort reſt, they commenced their third tilt, and had well examined where they could beſt place their thruſts. This was gallantly performed; for they hit, juſtly, the upper parts of the helmets, and the points of the lances entered: both were ſo neatly unhelmed, that the lacings burſt, and the helmets flew over the cruppers of their horſes on the field. The knights kept their ſeats and completed their courſe in handſome array, and then returned to their countrymen.

The tournament was now at an end, for no more tilters appeared on the part of the Engliſh. The earl of Huntingdon, the earl-marſhal, the lord Clifford, the lord Beaumont*, ſir John Clifton, ſir John d'Ambreticourt, ſir Peter Sherburne, and all thoſe knights who had tilted the preceding days, then waited in a body on the French knights, and thanked them warmly for the amuſements they had given them. They ſaid—'All the knights who have accompanied us having now tilted, we take our leave of you, and return to Calais on our way to England. We know well that whoever may wiſh to try their ſkill in arms will find you here for thirty days, according to your proclamation. On our return to England, we ſhall loudly ſpeak of your gallantry, and tell all thoſe who may inquire of theſe deeds of arms to come and witneſs them in perſon.'

'Many thanks,' replied the three knights:

* Lord Beaumont. Dugdale ſays his name was John, inſtead of Henry, as Froiſſart calls him.

they

'they ſhall be made welcome, and delivered by deeds of arms as you have been; and we deſire you will accept our beſt acknowledgments for the courteſy you have ſhewn us.'

In ſuch friendly manner did the Engliſh and French knights ſeparate, in the plain of St. Inglevere: the firſt took the road to Calais, but made no long ſtay; for on the Saturday-morning they embarked on board paſſage-boats, and landed at Dover about mid-day, when each retired to his inn. They ſtaid the whole of Saturday, and Sunday until after maſs, at Dover; where having refreſhed themſelves and their horſes, they continued their journey to Rocheſter, and there lay that night: on the morrow, they arrived at London, when they ſeparated, and each returned to his home.

The three French knights before named kept their engagements valiantly at St. Inglevere. When the Engliſh knights were gone, the king of France and the lord de Garencieres, who had witneſſed the tournament in diſguiſe, returned to their inn at Marquiſe; and on the morrow, at break of day, they ſet out for Paris, and never ceaſed riding until they came to Creil* on the river Oiſe, where at that time the queen of France reſided. Scarcely any one knew that the king was preſent at theſe tilts but his confidential valets de chambre.

From the time the Engliſh left Calais, I never heard that any others came from England to St.

* Creil,—dioceſe of Senlis, ten leagues and a half from Paris.

Inglevere to try their ſkill in arms. The three knights, however, remained there until the thirty days were fully accompliſhed, and then leiſurely returned each to his home. When they waited on the king of France, the duke of Touraine and other lords at Paris, they were moſt handſomely received. Indeed, they were intitled to ſuch reception, for they had gallantly behaved themſelves, and well ſupported the honour of the king and of the realm of France.

CHAP. XII.

THE DUKE OF BOURBON IS APPOINTED CHIEF OF AN EXPEDITION TO AFRICA, THAT IS UNDERTAKEN BY SEVERAL KNIGHTS OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND AT THE SOLICITATION OF THE GENOESE.

I HAVE delayed for a long time ſpeaking of a grand and noble enterpriſe that was undertaken by ſome knights of France, England and other countries, againſt the kingdom of Barbary. I wiſh not to forget nor to defer it; but, as I had begun on the tilts at St. Inglevere, I was deſirous to complete that account. Since that is done, I will return to other ſubjects, and refreſh my memory accordingly; for ſuch events as I have to relate are greatly amuſing, and, if I had not taken

pleaſure

pleaſure in inditing them, I ſhould never have ſucceeded. The text of the ſubject I mean to proceed on ſays, that about this time the Genoeſe were reported throughout France and other countries to be deſirous of raiſing a large army to invade Barbary; and that all knights, ſquires or men at arms, who would engage in this expedition, ſhould be ſupplied from Genoa with ſuch purveyances as biſcuit, freſh water, vinegar, and veſſels and galleys to tranſport them thither.

The cauſe of their forming this armament was, that the Africans had attacked the country of Genoa, plundering the iſlands belonging to them, and carrying off ſuch from the coaſts of Genoa as were not on their guard, by which they were kept under continual alarms. They poſſeſſed alſo a town, ſituated on the ſea-ſhore of Barbary, which is beyond meaſure ſtrong, and called Africa*, ſurrounded with high walls, gates and deep ditches. Like as the ſtrong town of Calais is the key of France and Flanders, and whoever is maſter of it may at all times enter thoſe countries, and from thence may be ſent a powerful force by ſea, to do miſchief to their neighbours, juſt ſo is the town of Africa, the ſtrong hold of the inhabitants of Barbary, Bugia and Tunis, and other infidel countries. The Genoeſe, who are rich merchants, bore great hatred to this town; for its

* Africa, a ſea-port town of Barbary, ſeventy miles diſtant from Tunis. It was razed to the ground by Andrew Doria, by the command of the emperor Charles V. and has never been rebuilt.

corſairs

corſairs frequently watched them at ſea, and when ſtrongeſt, fell on and plundered their ſhips, carrying their ſpoils to this town of Africa, which was, and is now, their place of depoſit, and may be called their warren.

The Genoeſe, to put an end to ſuch conduct, and to ſatisfy the complaints of their ſubjects, that were daily made to them from the iſland of Albe *, Sire †, Guerſe ‡, Boſtan §, Gorgennen ‖, and from the coaſt as far as the gulph of Lyons to the iſlands of Sardonne ¶, Fineſſee **, and even from the iſlands of Majorca ††, determined to make their ſituation known to the court of France, and to offer to ſuch knights as would undertake an expedition againſt theſe infidels, veſſels and proviſion, with a paſſage thither and back free of all coſts, provided that one of the king's uncles, or his brother the duke of Touraine (who, being young, ought to labour to gain renown) would take the chief command. They likewiſe offered the aid of pilgrims, from foreign parts to aſſiſt them, twelve thouſand ſelect Genoeſe croſs-bows, and eight thouſand infantry armed with ſpears and ſhields, all at their expenſe. They imagined,

* Albe. Q. Elba.
† Sire. Q. Cyprus.
‡ Guerſe. Q. Corſica.
§ Boſtan. Q.
‖ Gorgennen. Q. Gorgona.
¶ Sardonne. Q. Sardinia.
** Fineſſe. Q.
†† Majorca, &c. belonged to the king of Arragon.

that

that as now there was a truce between France, England and their allies, their knights would, from having nothing to do, be glad to join in this warfare, and that they ſhould have numbers of them from thoſe kingdoms.

When this intelligence was firſt brought to the French knights and ſquires, they were much rejoiced, in hope of gaining honour; and the ambaſſadors from Genoa were told they ſhould not return without their buſineſs being attended to, and ſuccour afforded them, for their anxiety to extend the Chriſtian faith was very praiſe-worthy. They waited at Paris, while it was under deliberation of the council who ſhould be appointed commander in chief. The duke of Touraine offered his ſervices to the king and council; but they, as well as the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, remonſtrated, that this command was not fit for him. They conſidered, that as the Genoeſe inſiſted on the king's brother, or one of his uncles, taking the command, the duke of Bourbon would be the moſt proper perſon, and that he ſhould have for his ſecond the lord de Coucy.

The Genoeſe ambaſſadors, having received a favourable anſwer from the king, and certain aſſurances of being aſſiſted with knights and men at arms from France, under the command of the duke of Bourbon, in the courſe of the year, were greatly contented. They took leave of the king, and returned to their own country, to relate the good news, and make preparations accordingly.

Reports of an invaſion of Barbary were ſoon ſpread throughout France: to ſome knights and ſquires it was agreeable, to others the contrary: all who were deſirous of going thither could not, as it would have been at their own charges, for no lord paid for any but thoſe of his own houſehold. It was alſo ordered, that no one from France ſhould make part of this expedition but ſuch as had the king's leave; for the council wiſhed not the realm to be void of defence, and the Genoſe were expreſsly bound not to ſuffer any ſervants to embark, but ſolely ſuch as were gentlemen, and men who could be depended upon. It was, beſides, meant as a compliment to the knights and ſquires of other nations who might wiſh to join in the enterpriſe. This regulation gave pleaſure to all foreign knights who heard of it.

The duke of Bourbon, having accepted the command, ſent his ſervants to Genoa, where they were to embark, to make the neceſſary preparations for him and his houſehold. The gallant count d'Auvergne, who was likewiſe of the expedition, did the ſame. The lord de Coucy, ſir Guy de la Trimouille, ſir John de Vienne, and all the great barons and knights of France who had obtained leave to make part of this army, were not behind hand in ſending thither purveyances ſuitable to their ſtate. The lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu, ſir Philip de Bar, the lord de Harcourt, ſir Henry d'Antoing, did ſo likewiſe. From Brittany and Normandy many great lords made preparations for this expedition to Barbary,

as

as well as from Hainault: among the laſt were the lord de Linge* and the lord de Havreth. Several knights came from Flanders; and the duke of Lancaſter had a baſtard-ſon, called Henry de Beaufort, whom, through devotion, he ſent thither. He had him well accompanied by many knights and ſquires of rank in England.

The count de Foix was unwilling his baſtard-ſon, Evan of Foix, ſhould remain behind, and had him properly attended by knights and ſquires, as he wiſhed him to keep his ſtate grandly. Every one had taken care to ſend before hand all he ſhould want; and thoſe at the greateſt diſtance from Genoa, left their countries the middle of May, but it was about a month before all were aſſembled.

The Genoeſe were well pleaſed on their arrival, and made handſome and rich preſents to the chiefs, the better to ſecure their affections. As the knights arrived, they were poſted adjoining each other, and, on being muſtered by the marſhals, amounted to fourteen hundred knights and ſquires. They were embarked on board of ſhips and galleys, that had been properly equipped for the voyage, on Saint John Baptiſt's day, in the year of grace 1390.

It was a beautiful ſight to view this fleet, with the emblazoned banners of the different lords glittering in the ſun and fluttering in the wind; and to hear the minſtrels and other muſicians

* Lord de Linge. MSS. Ligne.

ſounding their pipes, clarions and trumpets, whoſe ſounds were re-echoed back by the ſea. When all were embarked, they caſt anchor, and remained that night at the mouth of the harbour; but the ſervants and horſes were left behind on ſhore. A horſe worth fifty francs was on their embarkation ſold for ten, as many of the knights and ſquires were uncertain when, or if ever they ſhould return, and the keep of five horſes at Genoa was upwards of a franc a day: they therefore, on departing, made of them what money they could, but it was little enough.

There were about three hundred galleys to tranſport the men at arms and archers, and upwards of one hundred veſſels for the purveyances and other neceſſaries. On the morrow, at day-break, they weighed anchor, and rowed coaſtwiſe that and the ſucceeding night. The third day, they made Porto-fino, where they lay that night: at ſun-riſe, they rowed to Porto-Venere, and again caſt anchor. The enſuing morning they weighed and took to the deep, putting themſelves under the protection God and St. George.

When they had paſſed the iſland of Elba, they encountered a violent tempeſt, which drove them back by Gorgona, Sardinia and Corſica, into the gulph of Lyons, a poſition always dangerous; but they could not avoid it, for the tempeſt was ſo violent, that the ableſt mariner could not do any thing to prevent their running the utmoſt riſk of deſtruction: they waited therefore the will of God.

This

This ſtorm laſted a day and night, and diſperſed the fleet.

When the weather became calm and the ſea tranquil, the pilots who were acquainted with thoſe ſeas ſteered as directly as they could for the iſland of Commeres *, which is but thirty miles from the town of Africa, whither they bent their courſe. The maſters of the veſſels had held a council before they entered the gulph of Lyons, and determined, that ſhould they part company, they would rendezvous at the iſland of Commeres, and wait there until they were all aſſembled. This plan was adopted; and it was upwards of nine days before all were collected, ſo much had they been ſcattered.

The iſland of Commeres, though not large, is very pleaſant. The lords there refreſhed themſelves, and praiſed God for having all met again without eſſential loſs or damage. When on the eve of departure, the French lords, who took the lead, held a council on their future proceedings, as they were now ſo near the port of Africa.

We will for a while leave this expedition, and ſpeak of events that happened in France, more particularly in Auvergne.

---

* Commeres. This iſland is called Conimbres and Comi-nieres, in the printed and MS. editions. I ſuppoſe it muſt mean Comino or Cumin, Cuminum, and formerly Hepheſtia, a ſmall iſland in the Mediterranean, between Gozzo and Malta, belonging to the knights of Malta.—BAUDRAN.

CHAP. XIII.

AYMERIGOT MARCEL, CAPTAIN OF THE PILLAGING COMPANIES, HAVING FORTIFIED LA ROCHE DE VANDAIS, ON THE BORDERS OF LIMOUSIN AND AUVERGNE, IS BESIEGED BY THE VISCOUNT DE MAUX, BY COMMAND OF THE KING OF FRANCE.

DURING the time of the aſſembly of this body of men at arms in France, for the expedition to extend the Chriſtian faith, and gain renown, there were another ſort of men at arms wholly given up to plunder in Limouſin, Auvergne and Rouergue, who, in ſpite of the truce, were continually doing miſchief to theſe countries, which thought themſelves in ſecurity. The king of France had cauſed the truce to be publicly notified to the captains of the freebooters, particularly to Perrot le Béarnois, governor of Chaluçet, Aymerigot Marcel, Olim Barbe, captain of Donzac in Auvergne, who were perſonally named in the act, and were aſſured, that if the truce were in the ſmalleſt degree infringed, thoſe guilty of it ſhould be corporally puniſhed, without hope of mercy. This was done, that there might not be any excuſes made from ignorance of the treaty.

Some of the captains, fearful of a diſgraceful death, or of incurring the king's indignation, kept the peace very well. Others did not, for which they paid ſeverely, as you will hear in the continuation of this hiſtory.

You

You have before found it related in the courſe of theſe chronicles, indited and arranged by me, ſir John Froiſſart, treaſurer and canon of Chimay, how peace had been agreed on with many of the captains of caſtles in Auvergne, Limouſin, Rouergue and Cahorſin, by the mediation of John count d'Armagnac, and Berald dauphin of Auvergne, to whom they had ſurrendered their caſtles for different ſums of money. The captains were alſo, by theſe treaties, bound to renounce, during the truce, the continuance of the warfare in France, and to accompany the count d'Armagnac to Lombardy or whither elſe he might lead them.

He was deſirous to employ them in a war he was meditating againſt the lord Galeas de Viſconti, count de Vertus, for having diſinherited his couſins german, the ſons of his late uncle the lord Barnabo, as has been before mentioned.

The count d'Armagnac and the dauphin of Auvergne had laboured hard to gain over theſe captains, that the country might be at peace; and for this end a large ſum had been raiſed in Auvergne, Gevaudan, Rouergue, Cahorſin and Limouſin, to the amount of two hundred thouſand francs. This tax preſſed ſo hard on rich and poor, that many were forced to ſell their inheritance to obtain peace. They imagined, that having paid ſuch ſums, they ſhould remain unmoleſted by theſe robbers; but it was not ſo in many places, more eſpecially in thoſe parts where Aymerigot Marcel had his garriſon. Not-

withſtanding the fact that he had ſurrendered, by capitulation, his caſtle of Aloiſe, which is ſituated in the heart of Auvergne, to the count d'Armagnac, he continued to do much miſchief to the inhabitants. Aymerigot was ſo rich as to be able to pay down, if neceſſary, for his ranſom, one hundred thouſand francs, which he had gained by plunder during ten years that he had carried on this trade.

The count d'Armagnac was anxious to have Aymerigot among his followers to Lombardy, for two reaſons: one was, to have his advice, as in every thing relative to war he was ſubtle and enterpriſing, and very able reſpecting the ſcalado of forts, and the mode of war to be carried on: he therefore cauſed him to be told how deſirous he was of his company, and that he would be a great gainer if he would join him. The other reaſon of his wiſh was, that if Aymerigot ſhould remain behind, although he had ſold Aloiſe, he might ſtill do great harm to that country.

Aymerigot diſſembled in his negotiations with the count, and ſaid to thoſe ſent to him,—'When I ſhall witneſs the departure of the count d'Armagnac of Lombardy, and ſee for certain that he is in earneſt, I do not think, from the inclination I feel towards him, that I ſhall remain behind.' This was the only anſwer that could be obtained from him.

The count d'Armagnac reſided in Comminges and in the Toulouſain, making his preparations, and collecting men at arms. He would have haſtened

haſtened his expedition, if that to Africa had not interfered; but that delayed it for ſome little time, for many knights and ſquires, who were gone thither, had promiſed him their aſſiſtance, as ſoon as he ſhould begin his march. The ſuddenneſs of the invaſion of Barbary deranged his plans, and likewiſe induced the more ſpeedy capitulations with the captains of the free companies.

Aymerigot Marcel was much vexed that he had ſold his caſtle of Aloiſe, near St. Flour*, for his importance was loſt, and he was leſs feared. During the time he held it againſt the whole force of the country, he was dreaded and reſpected by his companions in arms. He kept it always in good repair and well proviſioned; for his compoſitions with the country round amounted to twenty thouſand florins yearly. He was quite melancholy, when he thought of his reduced ſtate, and would not diminiſh his treaſure, which he had gained by his robberies, now the means of increaſing it were cloſed. He ſaid to himſelf, that he heartily repented what he had done, becauſe in his opinion the pillaging life he had led, taking all things into conſideration, was not to be depiſed. At times, he converſed on this ſubject with his former companions, and ſaid,—'There is no pleaſure nor glory in this world like what men at arms, ſuch as ourſelves, enjoyed. How

* Saint Flour,—a town in Auvergne, 22 leagues from Clermont-ferrand, 25 from Riom.

happy

happy were we, when riding out in ſearch of adventures, we met a rich abbot, a merchant, or a ſtring of mules, well laden with draperies, furs or ſpices, from Montpellier, Beziers, or other places. All was our own, or at leaſt ranſomed according to our will. Every day we gained money. The peaſants of Auvergne and Limouſin loved us, and provided our caſtle with corn, meal, baked bread, litter for our horſes, oats, hay, good wine, fat beeves, ſheep and all ſorts of poultry: we lived like kings; and when we went abroad, the country trembled: every thing was ours, both in going and returning. How did I and the bourg Copane take Carlat? and how did I and Perrot le Béarnois win Chaluçet? How did we, you and I, without other aſſiſtance, ſcale the ſtrong caſtle of Marquel, that belongs to the count-dauphin? I only kept it five days, and was paid down on a table, five thouſand francs for it, of which I gave back one thouſand, from love to the count's children. By my troth, this was a profitable and pleaſant life, and I feel myſelf much reduced by ſelling Aloiſe, which was ſtrong enough to reſiſt any force that could be brought againſt it; and was beſide, at the time of my ſurrendering, ſo plentifully ſtored with proviſion and other neceſſaries, that it would not have needed any thing for ſeven years to come. I conſider myſelf, therefore, as deceived by this count d'Armagnac: indeed, Olim Barbe and Perrot le Béarnois forewarned me that I ſhould repent when too late, and

I now

I now find their words very true, for I moſt certainly do repent having parted with this caſtle.'

When his companions, who were now poor, thus heard Aymerigot complain, and perceived he was in earneſt, they replied,—' Aymerigot, we are ready to obey your commands. Let us renew the war, and conſider what ſtrong place we may ſeize on in Auvergne or Limouſin, and fortify it. We ſhall ſoon recover our loſſes, and have full ſcope for pillaging, as the count-dauphin and his brother Hugh are now out of the country, with many other knights and ſquires, on the expedition to Barbary; and in particular the lord de Coucy, who is lieutenant for the king over all theſe parts, is now likewiſe abſent on this ſame expedition. We need not therefore fear him, nor the duke of Berry, who is at Paris, and has been ſo ſome time, amuſing himſelf.'

' I know not well how to act,' ſaid Aymerigot; ' for though I am well inclined to follow what you adviſe, yet as I am perſonally named in the treaties, I am particularly pointed at.' ' Ah,' anſwered his companions, ' that need not make any difference, if you be willing. You are no vaſſal to the king of France, and therefore owe him neither homage nor obedience. You are the king of England's man; and your inheritance, which is now deſtroyed, was in Limouſin. We make war to obtain a livelihood, for we muſt live, and the Engliſh will never be diſpleaſed with us for ſo doing. All who wiſh for gain will join us; and I think we may ſhew a ſufficient cauſe for making

making war, by declaring we have not been paid the compoſitions that are due to us from Auvergne. Let us ſend, therefore, to the peaſants of different villages (taking care, however, to be ſtrong enough to enforce our orders), and tell them, that unleſs they compound with us, we will make war on them.'

'Well, be it ſo,' replied Aymerigot; 'but where can we at this moment fix our place of reſidence?' Some of them ſaid,—'We know of a fort that is diſmantled, belonging to the lord de la Tour, which no one guards. Let us go thither, and repair and ſtrengthen it; and, when this is done, we will garriſon it, and overrun at our pleaſure Limouſin and Auvergne.'

'And where is this fort ſituated?' aſked Aymerigot.

'One league from la Tour,' aſked thoſe who were acquainted with it, and had well examined its ſituation: 'it is called la Roche de Vandais.'

'On my faith, you ſay well: it is the very place for us,' replied Aymerigot; 'and, although the lands are now ſeparated from its dependance, it is a meſne fief on Limoges. We will go and look at it, and, if worth while, take poſſeſſion and fortify it.'

Having determined on this, they all went to la Roche de Vandais, examined its ſtrength minutely, and were more pleaſed with it than before: they inſtantly took poſſeſſion, and by degrees fortified the place before they made any excurſions or did harm to the country. When they had made it ſufficiently

ſufficiently ſtrong to withſtand an attack or ſiege, and the companions were all mounted, they began to overrun the more immediate neighbourhood, to make priſoners and ranſom them. They laid in ſtores of fleſh, meal, wax, wine, ſalt, iron, ſteel, and other neceſſaries; for nothing came amiſs to them that was not too hot or too heavy.

The inhabitants of the country were much aſtoniſhed at this, for they thought themſelves in perfect ſecurity on account of the truce between the two kings; but theſe robbers ſeized whatever they pleaſed in their houſes, or in the fields, calling themſelves the Adventurers. The lord de la Tour had his town and caſtle well guarded, for he was not well pleaſed to have ſuch neighbours a league from his reſidence. The dauphineſs of Auvergne, a valiant lady and of great prudence, who lived with her children in the ſtrong caſtle of the good town of Sardes*, ſituated on the river Eveque, did not think herſelf in ſafety when ſhe heard that Aymerigot and his band had fortified themſelves within la Roche de Vandais. She inſtantly ordered the garriſons of her caſtles of Marquel, Ondable, Chillac and Blere †, to be reinforced with men at arms, to avoid their being ſurpriſed; for ſhe much dreaded Aymerigot, ever ſince he had received from her, in one payment, five thouſand florins.

---

* Sardes—is Zarades, MSS. Q. if not Ardres, which is a town in Auvergne, and on a ſmall river that falls into the Allier; but its name is not in the map nor Gazetteer.

† Blere. Q. Bleſſe.

The

The countries of Auvergne and Limouſin now took alarm; and the knights and ſquires, with the townſmen of Clermont, Montferrant and Riom, and the towns on the Allier, reſolved to ſend notice of their ſituation to the king of France. In this they were joined by the dauphineſs; but, during this time, thoſe in la Roche de Vandais fortified themſelves very ſtrongly, and while about it they erected huts covered with boughs for their horſes.

When it was known to thoſe who had been diſbanded, and were now out of pay, that Aymerigot Marcel was continuing the war, they were much rejoiced: many came to offer him their ſervices, and he had very ſoon more than he wiſhed. None of them aſked for pay, but ſolely to be retained by him, for they knew well that thoſe under him would gain a ſufficiency from the overplus of the plunder which he gave up to his men. Sometimes he made excurſions in the upper parts of the diſtrict, and ſometimes on the contrary ſide, for no one ventured as yet to oppoſe him, ſo that his fame was ſpread far and near. Nothing was talked of in Auvergne and Limouſin but the robbers of la Roche de Vandais, and greatly was the country frightened by them.

The garriſon of Chaluçet, under the command of Perrot le Béarnois, adhered ſteadily to the truce; and when he learnt that Aymerigot was thus haraſſing the countries where the inhabitants imagined themſelves to be at peace with every one, he was much angered, and ſaid he behaved very ill. He alſo ſent to tell him not to expect any aſſiſtance,

aſſiſtance, nor to be admitted into Chaluçet nor into any other place under his command. Aymerigot was indifferent as to this, for he had plenty of places to retire to, in caſe of need, beſide Chaluçet, and men enough. There were beſides numbers that had nothing to do, and wiſhed for miſchief, who daily offered to increaſe his forces.

Perrot le Béarnois forbade his men, under pain of death, to make any ſallies injurious to the country people, for he declared he would moſt ſtrictly and honourably abide by the letter of the truce. Olim Barbe, however, captain of Donzac, diſſembled in this buſineſs, ſaying publicly he would adhere to the terms of the truce; but I was told that his men ſometimes made excurſions privately, and, when they had collected any conſiderable booty he inſiſted on having the advantage of it.

The deputies from Clermont, Montferrant and Riom arrived at Paris, where they found the king, the duke of Berry, the duke of Touraine and ſir Oliver de Cliſſon conſtable of France. They immediately waited on the duke of Berry and his council, to ſtate the cauſe of their coming, and to inform them that Aymerigot Marcel was pillaging Auvergne, and that evil-minded perſons were daily increaſing. They entreated them for God's ſake to provide a remedy, for, if it were ſuffered to continue much longer, the whole of Auvergne and Limouſin would be completely deſtroyed.

The king and the duke of Berry were much aſtoniſhed on hearing this intelligence, for they thought

thought the whole country was at peace, in conformity to the truce.

The deputies were aſked if the garriſons of Chaluçet and Donzac remained quiet: they replied,—'they had no complaints to make againſt any one but Aymerigot Marcel and his companions, who had fortified la Roche de Vandais.'

'Well,' replied the king and the duke of Berry, 'now, good people, return home, and look to us; for we will ſpeedily provide a remedy that ſhall be ſufficient: make what haſte you can back, and tell this as our anſwer, to thoſe who have ſent you.' The deputies were well pleaſed with this ſpeech, and, having repoſed themſelves for two days at Paris, they ſet out on their return, having taken leave of the king and the duke of Berry.

The king and his council did not delay attending to this buſineſs, for the duke of Berry had large poſſeſſions in Auvergne, and urged them on. They conſidered whom they ſhould ſend thither, for the lord de Coucy, the lieutenant of all the country, from la Rochelle to Bourdeaux, was now abroad in Barbary. He had, indeed, at his departure, appointed his couſin, ſir Robert de Bethune viſcount de Meaux, his deputy during his abſence. The council did not forget this, and thought he was beſt entitled to the command. Inquiries were made where he was to be found, and they learnt that he was at his reſidence at Condé ſur Marne. Letters were written to him, in the king's name, for him to come to Paris, and the meſſenger haſtening with them, found him and his

his lady at Condé. Having delivered his letters, the viſcount read their contents, and ſaid he would inſtantly obey the king's orders, as was but right.

Having made his preparations as ſpeedily as he could, he left Condé and rode on to Paris, where he waited on the king and council. On entering the council-chamber, he was told,—'Viſcount, make haſte and aſſemble all your retainers of men at arms, for you muſt immediately ſet off for Auvergne. There are bands of pillagers, of whom Aymerigot Marcel, as we are informed, is the chief, who rob and impriſon the country people. Let them be driven thence; and if you can any way entrap Aymerigot, and deliver him up to us, we ſhall have great joy. Orders have been given for you to receive the pay of your men at arms at Clermont in Auvergne; and, with regard to your expenſes thither, ſpeak to our treaſurer of the army. He has been charged to pay your ſmaller expenſes, and to hurry you away, for the buſineſs requires it.'

The viſcount replied he was quite ready, and, leaving the council, returned to his inn, where he employed perſons to write to ſuch knights and ſquires of the iſle of France and in Picardy, who were his acquaintance and dependants, deſiring them inſtantly to ſet out for Chartres, where they would find him prepared to muſter them. All to whom he had ſent complied with his requeſt; for they loved him, and looked to him as to an able captain. They were all at Chartres on the

appointed day, and amounted to two hundred lances, good men and to be depended on.

After they had been muſtered, they left Chartres, and took the road towards Auvergne, through the Bourbonnois. The news of this aſſiſtance coming thither was ſoon ſpread abroad, to the great joy of the inhabitants of Auvergne. It was fortunate ſo much haſte had been made in forwarding this force; for, had it been delayed ſix days later, Aymerigot and his troops had planned to ravage the country, between Clermont and Montferrant, and down the river Allier, and alſo the ſurrounding country of Riom, as far as Gannat*. Had they done ſo, they would have plundered it of one hundred thouſand francs at leaſt; for the parts I have mentioned are the very richeſt in Auvergne. None could have oppoſed them, for the whole country was void of men at arms; and the reports were, that Aymerigot's troops were more numerous than ever.

Aymerigot and his men were prepared for this excurſion; but they learnt, I know not how, whether from Pilgrims or ſpies, that a large body of men at arms was marching againſt them, under the command of the viſcount de Meaux, to beſiege and to drive them out of their fortreſs of la Roche de Vandais.

This intelligence made them defer their intended excurſion, and ſhut themſelves within their fort,

* Gannat,—a town in the Bourbonnois, five leagues from Riom.

for

for they foreſaw they would be beſieged. Aymerigot now began to repent what he had done, for, ſhould he be taken, no ranſom would be accepted for his life. He thus opened himſelf to ſome of his companions: 'I am completely diſgraced, by having followed bad advice, and avarice will be my ruin; for I ſhall be deſtroyed without hope of ranſom.' They replied,—'Why are you now ſo doubtful of yourſelf? We know you are the moſt powerful man at arms in theſe countries, and you have a good garriſon, well provided with all things. We are men of determined reſolution, as eager to defend our lives, as you can be to defend your own. You cannot be ruined without our ſuffering with you: if, unfortunately, you be made priſoner, you are ſo wealthy, you can eaſily tempt them with your ranſom; but our poverty muſt prevent us from ſo doing, and our heads pay the forfeit. We will therefore ſell them as dearly as we can, and guard them to the utmoſt of our abilities. Be not, therefore, alarmed at any thing you may ſee or hear: we need not care for the ſiege, if we manage our defence with prudence.' Thus did the companions of Aymerigot Marcel comfort him.

The Viſcount de Meaux, with his men at arms, continued their march through Moulins, in the Bourbonnois; but the ducheſs of Bourbon, daughter to the count dauphin, received there the viſcount and the knights very grandly, and entertained them at dinner. That evening, they lay at Saint Pourçain. Thence they marched to Gannat,

Aigue-perſes* and Riom, where they halted. They then marched to Clermont, and were gladly received by the biſhop and the inhabitants. The men at arms received pay at Clermont, for a tax had been levied to this effect, and it was there delivered to them. They continued their march to Nôtre Dame d'Orcinal†, four leagues from la Roche de Vandais. The viſcount de Meaux there fixed his quarters, as the knights and ſquires from Auvergne and Limouſin had named this place for the point of aſſembly. When they were all collected, they amounted to more than four hundred lances, and one hundred genoeſe croſs-bows. There were with the viſcount, the lord de Montagu from the Vermandois, and his brother, the lord de Dommart, ſir Bernard de la Riviere, ſir William le Bouteiller, the lord de Domme, the lord de la Roche, the lord de la Tour, ſir Lewis d'Abiere‡, the lord de Saint-Ampiſſe, ſir Robert Dauphin, with many more.

The captains of the Genoeſe were two valiant ſquires, called Albert d'Eſpinolle and Callinace. Sir Lewis l'Eſglinelle, a gallant ſquire, was at this time the viſcount's maſter of the houſehold. The Genoeſe, as well as the whole army, was completely equipped with arms and other neceſſaries, or they

---

* Aigue-perſes,—a village in Limouſin, dioceſe of Limoges.

† Nôtre Dame d'Orcinal,—is not in the Gazetteer, but Nôtre Dame de Roquemadour, which is the name in the MSS. is a celebrated pilgrimage in Quercy, near Figeac.

‡ In the MS. it is ſir *Louis d'Antibiere.*

would

would not have paſſed the muſter made by the viſcount de Meaux.

The garriſon, under the command of Aymerigot Marcel and his uncle Guyot du Sel, in la Roche de Vandais, hearing that ſo large a force was now advanced to Nôtre Dame de Roquemadour, with the intention of beſieging them, called a general council, to conſider how they could the moſt effectually reſiſt it. They firſt reſolved, they had not any occaſion for horſes, ſince they would be prevented from uſing them by the ſiege. Tolerably near to la Roche de Vandais was another fort, called Saint Soupery, under the government of Aymerigot, where his wife reſided, and whither he had ſent the greater part of his wealth. He gave orders for the ſervants and horſes to be received in this fort, until better times.

La Roche de Vandais was naturally ſtrong, and the preſent garriſon had fortified it by every means in their power. The lord de la Tour was greatly blamed by the country for his neglect of it, as they ſaid it was from this circumſtance that they were now ſo haraſſed; and, if he had thought the expenſe of keeping a guard too great, why had he not given it up to the inhabitants of the country, who would have diſmantled it ſo that no one would have ever thought of repairing it? whereas now the walls had been left entire, and the manſion tolerably good: ſuch was the ſtate in which Aymerigot had found it.

La Roche de Vandais is ſeparated from the high mountains that ſurround it, and is ſeated on an

inſulated rock; one ſide of which they had ſo ſtrongly fortified that it could only be approached in front, and attacked by ſkirmiſhes. The force, under the command of the viſcount de Meaux, left Nôtre Dame de Roquemadour, and advanced to la Roche de Vandais, which they laid ſiege to, and by degrees improved their quarters. The counteſs-dauphine, on hearing that la Roche de Vandais was beſieged, with a ſufficient force under the viſcount de Meaux, was greatly rejoiced; and as ſhe imagined, from the haſte in which he had left Paris, he might not have brought tents or pavilions with him, ſhe inſtantly ordered two handſome tents belonging to her lord to be made ready and ſent to him as a loan, for his better accommodation during the ſiege.

The viſcount received very thankfully theſe tents, which came ſo opportunely, and returned his beſt compliments to the counteſs for her attentions. The lord de la Tour was at home, being but one league from his caſtle, ſo that he had every thing he could wiſh for. The other knights and ſquires accommodated themſelves as well as they could. They had proviſion in abundance and cheap, for it was ſent thither from all quarters. As it was the middle of Auguſt, the weather was warm and pleaſant, and the knights were comfortably lodged under huts made of green boughs.

Intelligence was brought to the army that made them ſuſpicious leſt the neighbouring garriſons of Chaluçet and Donzac would unite together. and

one

one morning or evening, when they were off their guard, come and attack them, to force them to raiſe their ſiege. The viſcount de Meaux and his knights held a council on this intelligence, and reſolved to ſend a herald to Perrot le Béarnois, governor of Chaluçet, and to Olim Barbe at Donzac, to know whether they were at war or peace with theſe garriſons, and according to their anſwer to prepare themſelves.

The herald, being inſtructed as to what he was to ſay and how he was to act, departed, and, on his arrival at Chaluçet, accidentally found Perrot le Béarnois at the barriers amuſing himſelf with his companions in throwing the bar. He diſmounted, and aſked for the governor. On his being pointed out, he advanced towards him, and punctually delivered the meſſage he had been charged with. Perrot replied,—'Herald, you will tell your maſters who have ſent you hither, that we mean as loyally and truly to keep the truce which has been concluded between France and England, as we expect it will be kept with us. Should any of our people infringe the ſmalleſt article of it, and we be made acquainted therewith, we will lay hands on them, if it ſhould be in our power, and inflict ſuch puniſhment as they deſerve and as we have promiſed to execute on them. I wiſh you would alſo tell your maſters, that what Aymerigot Marcel has done was without any advice from us, to whom he never ſpoke on the ſubject. We have forbidden him or his people to ſeek refuge within our do-

main, and, ſhould they think of ſo doing it will ill befal them.'

The herald was conducted within the fort, and entertained at dinner; after which he took his leave, and Perrot, out of love to the lords of France, preſented him with ten francs. The herald received them thankfully, and departed for Donzac, where he ſaw the governor Olim Barbe, a Gaſcon. He addreſſed him as he had done Perrot, and received for anſwer, that he would not on any account infringe the truce, for by ſo doing he ſhould be diſgraced. The herald dined at the caſtle of Donzac, and, on taking leave, had ten francs given to him. He returned to la Roche de Vandais, where he was ſurrounded by knights and ſquires anxious to hear the anſwers he had brought. The herald minutely related every thing that had paſſed; and the viſcount de Meaux and his companions were more eaſy reſpecting Perrot le Béarnois and Olim Barbe than before: without fear from that quarter, they continued their ſiege with greater vigour.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

AYMERIGOT MARCEL ENDEAVOURS, BUT IN VAIN, TO RAISE THE SIEGE OF LA ROCHE DE VANDAIS, BY LETTERS AND MESSAGES TO THE KING OF ENGLAND, THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, THE VISCOUNT DE MEAUX, AND EVEN TO THE DUKE OF BERRY.

DURING the ſiege of la Roche de Vandais, which laſted for nine weeks, there were conſtant ſkirmiſhes between the two parties, in which many were wounded by the croſs-bows, for the Genoeſe are expert markſmen. The garriſon had much the advantage of the beſiegers, and I will tell you how. They could ſally forth whenever they pleaſed, for it would require ſix thouſand men at leaſt to have completely ſurrounded the caſtle. When the ſiege firſt took place, Aymerigot felt that he was acting wrong; but to turn the matter as much to his advantage as he could, and if poſſible preſerve la Roche de Vandais, he determined to ſend one of his men, who was well ſpoken, to England, with credential letters to the king and the duke of Lancaſter.

Aymerigot opened the matter to his uncle, Guyot de Sel, who, though about ſixty years of age, was well acquainted with arms and with mankind. Guyot approved of the manner in which his nephew intended acting, and ſaid, that to ſend

a perſon

a perſon well ſpoken, and well informed, to England, would not be loſt pains. They ſelected a varlet who had been educated by them, and inſtructed him as follows: 'We will conduct thee in ſafety out of this fort, in ſpite of our enemies, and give thee money ſufficient for the journey thou art to perform, as well as for thy other wants. Thou wilt carry to England theſe three letters; one to the king, one to the duke of Lancaſter, and the other to the king's council; which thou wilt punctually deliver. Thou wilt recommend me handſomely to them; and, as theſe are credential letters, they will aſk, 'What is the object of thy coming?' Thou wilt ſay, that Aymerigot Marcel, their little ſoldier and ſubject, who is firm in his obedience to their will, is beſieged in a ſmall fort belonging to the king of England, as one of the meſne fiefs of Limouſin; that thoſe who are before it exert themſelves to their utmoſt to gain the place, and make him and his companions priſoners; that the beſiegers are ſent thither by the king of France, under the command of a couſin to the lord de Coucy, called ſir Robert viſcount de Meaux; that the object of this miſſion is to requeſt the king of England, his council, and the duke of Lancaſter, as lieutenant for the king in the Bordelois, to write to the viſcount de Meaux to depart inſtantly from before la Roche de Vandais with all his men. Be ſure to have inſerted in the letters for the viſcount, that he be careful not to infringe the truce ſigned at Leulinghen, or to dread the conſequences, becauſe I know not what effect

theſe

theſe letters may have on the viſcount, nor what anſwer he will make, for he is a ſtrange ſort of a man. Obtain, likewiſe, letters from the king, the council, and the duke of Lancaſter, to the duke of Berry; for, if he pleaſe, the ſiege will be inſtantly raiſed. Manage to bring back with thee, for thy greater credit, one of the knights of honour to the king or the duke of Lancaſter, or Derby the herald. Salute him from me, and ſay, if he will accompany thee, (for he is an able negotiator, and well acquainted with the duke of Berry and the lords of France,) I will give him one hundred francs. Keep well in thy memory all I have ſaid, and tell every one to whom thou ſhalt ſpeak, that this little fort, which I have garriſoned, will be very convenient to the Engliſh on the renewal of the war; for it is ſituated on the borders of Auvergne and Limouſin, and thoſe countries may be made to contribute upwards of two hundred thouſand francs in one ſeaſon.'

Aymerigot Marcel having, in the preſence of his uncle, well tutored his meſſenger, and given him his credential letters, and one hundred francs for his expenſes, he was eſcorted from the fort at midnight, on foot, to another fort belonging to Aymerigot, called Saint Soupery. He there choſe the beſt horſe, as they were all at his diſpoſal, for he had a long journey to make, and paſſed through France as a native of the province of Auvergne. On his arrival at Calais, he made acquaintance with ſir John Beauchamp, the governor, to whom he told a part of his buſineſs, that he might be

the

the ſooner forwarded on his journey. This ſucceeded; for ſir John ordered him an immediate paſſage to Dover, whence, on having his horſe put on ſhore, he continued his road to London, and there arrived in a day and a half. He was fortunate to find the king, his two uncles of Lancaſter and York, with the council, at the palace of Weſtminſter, conſidering the affairs of Northumberland, and what force they ſhould ſend thither, for the Scots no way obſerved the truce.

The meſſenger from Aymerigot having intruſted the ſubject of his coming to the maſter of the inn where he put up, he conducted him to Weſtminſter, and procured him admiſſion to the duke of Lancaſter, who had arrived before the other counſellors, and was in the preſence-chamber. He preſented the duke with the letter addreſſed to him, who, having opened and read it, took the meſſenger aſide to learn the cauſe of his arrival. The varlet related to him every particular wherewith Aymerigot had charged him. The duke, having heard him, aſked if had more letters. He replied, 'One for the king, and another for the council.' 'It is well,' anſwered the duke: 'I will obtain for you an audience,' and gave orders to one of his attendants to take care of him.

The duke entered the council-chamber, and, when he ſaw a favourable opportunity, mentioned the arrival of Aymerigot's meſſenger: by his motion, the varlet was introduced, and preſented his letters

to

to the king and to the council. When they were read, he was desired to explain the object of his mission. Being well tutored, and not afraid of speaking, he was not abashed, otherwise he need not have made the journey, and he explained so eloquently the reasons of his coming, and the wishes of Aymerigot, that he was attentively listened to. When he had told all he was charged with, he was informed that they would consider the matter, and that he should have an answer to his demands.

He then quitted the council-chamber, and waited for the answer to the letters. He was told that the king would write to the viscount de Meaux, and to the duke of Berry, in the manner Aymerigot had desired. The duke of Lancaster promised to do the same, and that these letters should be delivered by an English squire attached to the duke; and that Derby the herald should cross the sea, and accompany them when they gave their letters, to aid their success; for he was well known to many lords in Auvergne, particularly to the duke of Berry.

Aymerigot's messenger was very happy to hear this, and followed so closely the duke of Lancaster that in a few days the letters were written, and the gentleman, whose name, I believe, was Cherbury, who was to carry them, received orders of departure. The herald Derby most willingly went with him, for Aymerigot's varlet had told him from his master, that if he would cross the sea, he

he ſhould receive one hundred francs on his arrival at la Roche de Vandais.

The letters being ſealed, theſe three took their leave of the duke of Lancaſter, and haſtened to Dover: they croſſed to Calais in a paſſage-boat, where they lay that night, and at low water diſembarked their horſes, and on the morrow rode to Boulogne. They paſſed through Picardy to Paris, but, making no ſtay there, continued their journey to Auvergne.

When arrived at Limoges and the environs of la Roche de Vandais, they cautiouſly advanced to enter the caſtle privately; but, on conſideration, the ſquire and herald did not think it prudent to enter la Roche de Vandais, but ſent the meſſenger forward, ſaying they could now find the way themſelves, and that it would not have a good appearance ſhould they be ſeen with him, for it would look as if he had been ſent to bring them from England; and that what they had to ſay to the viſcount de Meaux would come with more weight as from the king of England himſelf, than if any others had interfered in it.

The varlet agreed to their reaſons, and, at night-fall, returned to the fort, by a road he was acquainted with, without any hindrance from the beſiegers. He there found Aymerigot Marcel, his uncle Guyot du Sel, and the other companions, who made him good cheer, and were aſtoniſhed that he could have returned from England in ſo few days. He related every thing that had paſſed, and that a ſquire from the duke of Lancaſter and Derby the herald

herald had accompanied him with letters from the king and the duke to the viſcount de Meaux and to the duke of Berry, ſhould there be occaſion. 'And why did they not come with you hither?' aſked Aymerigot. 'Through prudence, as they told me,' replied the varlet; 'for they will undertake the commiſſion and delivery of their letters themſelves, and think it better than that any appearance of colluſion ſhould be ſeen between you and them.' 'They act wiſely,' ſaid Guyot de Sel, 'and ſhew by this, that the king of England and the duke of Lancaſter ſend them, of their own accord, and that they are intereſted in the matter.' 'Such are their intentions,' anſwered the meſſenger.

Aymerigot was delighted on hearing this, and told his varlet that he had done juſtice to his commiſſion, and in a few days he would handſomely reward him for it. The Engliſh ſquire and Derby rode on for la Roche de Vandais, to the place where the beſiegers lay, and enquired for the quarters of the viſcount de Meaux. On being conducted thither, they found the viſcount amuſing himſelf with ſeeing the bar thrown.

On their approach, they bowed, which civility he returned, and aſked, 'whence they came.' They replied, 'from England, and that they were ſent by the king and the duke of Lancaſter.' 'You are welcome,' ſaid the viſcount; 'but what buſineſs can have brought you to this wild country?' 'My lord,' anſwered Derby, 'this is a ſquire attached to the duke of Lancaſter, who brings you letters

letters from the king of England and from his lord, which, if you pleaſe, you will read. I have accompanied him, becauſe I am ſo well acquainted with this country, to ſerve him as a guide.'

The ſquire preſented his letters, which the viſcount, after examining the ſeals, knew to be authentic, and to come from England. He called one of his men aſide who could read, and had their contents repeated over two or three times, until he was fully maſter of them. He was a while penſive, for the king of England had written, to complain that he was day and night occupying a part of his territories with a large army, and doing acts to infringe the truce, which he ought not to do, being directly contrary to the articles that had been ſworn and ſealed between him and his adverſary of France; and that, as ſoon as he ſhould have peruſed theſe letters, he muſt raiſe the ſiege, march away his army, and leave Aymerigot Marcel in peaceable poſſeſſion of a caſtle which had coſt him ſuch large ſums to fortify. Such, and many other expreſſions in favour of Aymerigot, did theſe letters contain.

The letter from the duke of Lancaſter was nearly ſimilar to thoſe from the king and council; for he was ſovereign lord and duke of Aquitaine.

The viſcount de Meaux, having conſulted ſome of his friends, ſaid to the ſquire and the herald,—'My fair ſirs, the intelligence you have brought demands full conſideration: I will adviſe upon it, and you ſhall ſoon have my anſwer.' They were then conducted to the viſcount's tent, to partake

of

of his wine. During, this a council was ſummoned of the lord de la Tour, ſir William le Bouteiller, ſir Robert Dauphin, ſir Louis d'Abiere, the lord de Montagu, and ſir Berald de la Riviere, for this laſt was of the houſehold of the viſcount.

When they were aſſembled, the viſcount explained to them the cauſe, and laid before them the letters he had received. The knights were much ſurpriſed how intelligence of their ſiege could have been carried to England for ſuch letters to be ſent from thence, as their ſiege had not laſted one month. 'I will tell you what I imagine,' ſaid the viſcount: 'this Aymerigot is a cunning fellow; and the moment he perceived we intended beſieging him, he ſent a perſon to England to requeſt ſuch letters might be written as are now before you, and which I ſhall obey or not as I pleaſe. I inform you, that I ſhall inſtantly anſwer them; but, in regard to the orders of the king of England and the duke of Lancaſter, I ſhall not pay any attention to them, for I am no way bound to obey them, but ſolely the king of France, my lord, who has intruſted me with this command, and ſent me hither. Let the herald and ſquire be introduced, and I will give them my anſwer.'

They were ſought for, and conducted to the aſſembly of the viſcount and his knights: when in their preſence, they bowed their heads, and the viſcount thus ſpoke: 'You Derby, and you Thomas Cherbury, for ſuch I think are the names you are deſigned by in the letters which you have brought from the king of England and the duke

of Lancaſter. They have been informed, it ſeems, (but I know not how, whether by a meſſenger from Aymerigot Marcel or ſome friend of his, who has been in his name to England) that I am quartered with a large army on the lands of the king of England, and order me inſtantly to raiſe the ſiege, march away my men, and leave Aymerigot in peaceable poſſeſſion of the ſmall fort that has coſt him ſo large a ſum to repair and ſtrengthen.

'They tell me likewiſe, that I am riſking my own diſhonour, by thus infringing a truce, which has been agreed to for three years, between the kings of France and England, and their allies. I declare to you, my fair ſirs, that I will not, by any means, violate the ſmalleſt article of the truce, nor ſhall it be infringed, by any act of mine, during my reſidence here.

'I am the king of France's ſubject, my liege lord, who has ordered me hither as his marſhal, for the preſent, from the complaints that have been made him, by the nobles and other inhabitants of the countries of Auvergne and Limouſin, of the great damages they have ſuffered from Aymerigot Marcel, who has ſeized a fort on the confines of theſe two provinces that had been abandoned, and was never again intended to be inhabited, which he has repaired and ſtrengthened, not as a manſion, or houſe for recreation, but as a caſtle and rendezvous for robbers and marauders. I am therefore ordered hither to defend and guard the country againſt ſuch pillagers as may be collected

collected within this fort, called la Roche de Vandais, to prevent their increaſe in numbers and in wickedneſs, and to arreſt all of them I may be able to lay hold of, that they may ſuffer the puniſhment due to their crimes. In conſequence, my fair ſirs, I ſhall ſtrictly obey the commands I have received, and loyally acquit myſelf of my duty. Of courſe, therefore, I ſhall not move from hence for any orders I may receive, until I ſhall have poſſeſſion of this fort, and the garriſon that now holds out againſt me and my companions.

'Should Aymerigot Marcel ſet up a plea, that I have any way broken the truce, which is equivalent to a perfect peace for the time, let him come forth, and I will have him fought with by as good, if not a better, man than himſelf, and prove that it is he alone who has, and continues to violate the articles of the truce. Now, my fair ſirs, having maturely weighed every thing, I have given you my anſwer, and you may return when you pleaſe; but I beg that, on your return, you will neither add to nor diminiſh any part of what I have ſaid to you; for reporters, by not relating the exact words in which any converſation has taken place, do not truly inform their lords of the matter.'

'My lord,' replied the ſquire, 'Derby and myſelf are come hither ſolely to hear what anſwer you ſhall be pleaſed to make us, and carry it back, and ſince you have done ſo, we need not longer remain.'

They took leave of the viſcount, who ordered ten francs to be given the herald, out of affection to the king of England, who had ſent him, and regard for the duke of Lancaſter, to whom he was attached. When they were on the road to Clermont, for they ſaid they had come that way, and would return by the ſame, and when they had advanced about half a league, the following converſation paſſed between them: 'We have had ill ſucceſs: we muſt wait on the duke of Berry, who lives in Auvergne.' 'He is lord of this whole country,' ſaid Derby, 'and himſelf duke of Berry and Auvergne. If he will order the viſcount de Meaux to decamp, he muſt do ſo, for he dare not diſobey him. As we have letters to him from the king and the duke of Lancaſter, it is but right he ſhould ſee them, and that we ſhould know his intention on their ſubject.' Thus did they converſe until they arrived at Clermont. They were made welcome, for the herald was well acquainted in theſe parts, having been there before; and when any queſtions were aſked, who and what they were, they declared themſelves meſſengers from the king of England. Having inquired where the duke reſided, they were told at a handſome caſtle, called la Nonnette. The herald knew it well, and, leav-leaving Clermont, they rode to Vioire *, and thence to la Nonnette, but the mountain is very ſteep on which is ſituated the caſtle. On their

* Vioire,—probably Iſſoire, as la Nonette is near to that town.

arrival,

arrival, they found numbers of the duke's ſervants playing in the ſquare before the caſtle-gate. The herald was known to many of them, and conducted to the duke of Berry, who, in conſideration of his regard to the king of England and the duke of Lancaſter, ordered him and his companion to be well taken care of.

The ſquire, being the bearer of the letters from the king, preſented them to the duke, who, having read them twice ſlowly through, paused a little, and then gave ſuch courteous anſwers as both were ſatisfied with; for he ſaid, 'from his affection to his couſins, he would do all in his power to comply with their requeſts.' The herald and ſquire concluded from this, that they ſhould completely ſucceed in their miſſion, and were in high ſpirits; but, as you ſhall hear, they were diſappointed.

The duke of Berry was not neglectful of the buſineſs, and exerted himſelf to have the ſiege of la Roche de Vandais raiſed, from his regard to the king of England and the duke of Lancaſter, who entreated it; and engaged, that if Aymerigot Marcel were left in the quiet poſſeſſion of his fort, he ſhould not, hereafter, moleſt the country, and that he ſhould make any reparation to the king of France for having offended him. The duke of Berry, anxious to oblige the Engliſh who were in his caſtle, wrote letters to this purport to the viſcount de Meaux; and, before they were ſealed, had them read to his gueſts, who were exceedingly pleaſed with their contents.

The letters were diſpatched by an able ſquire of the duke to the viſcount de Meaux, who, having learnt their contents, ſummoned his principal knights, and had them again read in their preſence, during the time the ſquire who had brought them was made welcome; for, out of love to the duke of Berry, they gave him good cheer. 'Gentlemen,' ſaid the viſcount to his companions, 'we ſhall never have peace ſince the duke of Berry ſupports Aymerigot, who is the greateſt enemy Auvergne and its poor inhabitants have ever had, and for theſe laſt twelve years has ſo ſore oppreſſed them. I thought the duke hated him; but it ſeems I was miſtaken, for he commands me to break up the ſiege. I will not at this moment obey his orders, but excuſe myſelf from ſo doing, by the commiſſion I have received from the king our lord, who ſtrictly enjoined me, on leaving Paris, not to quit this place for any orders I might receive, except they came from himſelf, until I had conquered the fort of la Roche de Vandais, and taken Aymerigot by fair or foul means. The duke now commands me to raiſe the ſiege, the inſtant I have read his letters; but, by my faith, I will do no ſuch thing.'

'Sir,' replied the knights and ſquires of Auvergne, 'you ſay loyally and well: we will keep ſteady to you. We ſuppoſe that my lord of Berry is induced to write thus in favour of his enemies, by ſimilar letters from the king of England and the duke of Lancaſter to thoſe you have received, which the herald and Engliſh ſquire have carried to him.'

him,' 'I dare ſay you have gueſſed right,' ſaid the viſcount: 'I will, if I can, find out the truth of it.'

The ſquire was called in to receive his anſwer, and, when in the preſence of the aſſembled knights, the viſcount thus addreſſed him, calling him by his name, for he knew him well: 'Peter, I wiſh you to underſtand that I owe, and am deſirous of paying, all obedience to my lord of Berry, for he is ſo noble, and ſo nearly related to the king, that I ſhould be ſorry to do otherwiſe, but myſelf and companions, whom you ſee, have been for theſe five weeks before this fort, to take it and the thieves who garriſon it, by poſitive orders from the king and his council. We wonder, therefore, and not without reaſon, how my lord of Berry can entreat us in favour of his enemies, and deſire us to raiſe the ſiege and march away. We all agree in declaring that, if it were done, we ſhould give the greateſt encouragement to all thieves who in future may overrun the kingdom, and induce them to commit the greateſt outrages. Peter, you will tell the duke of Berry from us all, and from me in particular, that we are ready and willing to obey his commands, but that I have been ſo poſitively ordered to continue this ſiege, with as much vigour and patience as poſſible, until I be maſter of the place and garriſon, that I dare not act contrary; and ſay, that I ſhall not obey any other commands but thoſe of the king, whoſe ſubject I am, and who has ſent me hither. I beg of you, Peter, to tell me one thing, if it is not an improper queſtion for

you to anſwer, how comes it that my lord of Berry ſues in favour of Aymerigot Marcel, who has done ſuch miſchief to Auvergne and Limouſin, now that he is in a fair way of being caught and puniſhed for his wickedneſs and breach of faith in the articles of the truce?'

The ſquire replied, 'Two Engliſhmen, a herald and another, have come to the duke, with very preſſing letters from the king of England and the duke of Lancaſter in favour of Aymerigot.' 'I readily believe you,' ſaid the viſcount: 'it is Derby the herald, and a ſquire called Cherbury, who likewiſe brought me the other day letters ſimilar, I ſuppoſe, to thoſe you mention. Say alſo from me, in addition to what I have before ſpoken, that I beg my lord of Berry to conſider well this matter; that letters thus obtained from lords on the other ſide of the water deſerve no attention from lords on this ſide, who love the honour or advantage of the kingdom of France.'

'My lord,' anſwered the ſquire, 'be aſſured that I will repeat every word you have ſaid to the duke of Berry, for Aymerigot is not ſo much in my favour but I would rather ſee his puniſhment than his deliverance.' On this, the ſquire took leave of the viſcount and knights preſent, mounted his horſe, and rode to la Nonnette, where he related to the duke of Berry, that the viſcount de Meaux would not, for any other commands but thoſe directly from the king, break up his ſiege. This anſwer was not very agreeable to the duke, who imagined he was of that importance, his letters

ters ought to have attention paid them in France, or at leaſt in Auvergne. When Derby and his companion learnt the purport of the anſwer, they were much caſt down, for they ſaw they had laboured in vain. They aſked the duke, what they were now to do. 'Shall we leave you with unſatisfactory anſwers to our king and the duke of Lancaſter? who had the fulleſt hope you would have had the ſiege of la Roche de Vandais raiſed, for it is within your territories.'

'A little patience,' replied the duke: 'Aymerigot is in a very ſtrong place, and, unleſs ſome unfortunate accident happen, cannot for a long time be taken. I muſt ſhortly go to Paris; and, when there, I will preſs the matter warmly with the king and his council, ſince my good couſins of England are ſo earneſt in the matter. You both ſhall accompany me, and witneſs the exertions I make.' This ſpeech contented the ſquire and the herald.

Within four days afterward, the duke ſet out from la Nonnette, leaving there the ducheſs and the greater part of his houſehold, and went to Riom in Auvergne. He waited there eight days for the count de Sancerre and the lord de Renel*, whom he had ſent to Avignon on his private affairs. On their arrival, they ſet out together through the Bourbonnois, and by a ſhort day's journey, came to Bourges, where they tarried two days. On the third, the duke departed, and came to Mehun ſur

* The lord de Renel. The MSS. have Revel.

Yevre,

Yevre*, where he had one of the handſomeſt caſtles in the world; for the duke had expended upwards of three hundred thouſand francs in building and ornamenting it.

He remained there a fortnight, to the great uneaſineſs of the two Engliſhmen who were ſuitors for Aymerigot; but, as they could not help it, they diſſembled their thoughts. Indeed, the duke no longer intended interfering about him, and I will explain why. The count de Sancerre, the lord de Renel and ſir Peter Meſpin were his principal adviſers: they heavily charged Aymerigot with ſeveral crimes, gently blaming the duke, and ſaying it was unbecoming him to interfere in the affairs of ſo notorious a pillager, whoſe whole life had been infamous; that he had committed ſuch diſgraceful acts in Auvergne and Limouſin, it would be improper to ſpeak in his favour, and that he ought to be left for the king's juſtice to puniſh. This, and ſpeeches ſimilar to it, had ſo cooled the duke as to prevent him from thinking longer on the ſubject; but the two Engliſhmen did not neglect their duty in reminding the duke of it, who, diſſembling his real opinion, courteouſly anſwered, 'Have patience: we ſhall ſoon be at Paris.' Notwithſtanding this, he ſtill remained at Mehun ſur Yevre more than three

* Mehun ſur Yevre. Charles VII. built a large caſtle, or probably repaired this of the duke of Berry, wherein he died 1461, having ſtarved himſelf for fear of being poiſoned by his ſon, Louis XI.

weeks,

weeks, planning new improvements with his maſter of the works, Andrew Beau-neveu, in ſculpture and painting; for in ſuch arts he took great delight, and was well ſkilled in them. There was not a more able man in this reſpect than maſter Andrew Beau-neveu, in any country, as may be judged from the many fine works he executed in France, Hainault (his native country), and England, where they now remain.

CHAP XV.

AYMERIGOT MARCEL HAVING LEFT LA ROCHE DE VANDAIS, TO SEEK SUCCOUR FROM OTHER PILLAGERS, HIS LIEUTENANT, GUYOT DU SEL, IS SURPRISED BY AN AMBUSCADE, AND THE FORT SURRENDERS ON CAPITULATION.

I WILL now relate what happened to Aymerigot Marcel, and to his fort of la Roche de Vandais. He had a quick imagination, and concluded, from the continuance of the ſiege, that the letters from the king of England and the duke of Lancaſter had failed in the effect he looked to from them. He therefore thought of another expedient, which was to leave his caſtle and ride night and day unto the garriſons in Perigord and other places, to call upon Guyonnet de Sainte Foix, Ernauton

nauton de Sainte Colombe, Ernauton de Roſtem, John de Morſen, Peter d'Anchin, Remonnet de Copane, with other gaſcon and béarnois men at arms of the Engliſh party, and entice them by fair ſpeeches to enter Auvergne for the ſake of plunder, and then to advance to la Roche de Vandais, ſome morning or evening, and capture the knights and ſquires before it, which would bring them more than one hundred thouſand francs for their ranſoms, without counting ſmaller articles of pillage.

He explained his whole plan to his uncle, Guyot du Sel, and aſked his opinion. He replied, that he very much approved of it, for that he ſaw no other means of being delivered from the French. 'Well, uncle,' ſaid Aymerigot, 'ſince you approve, I will undertake it; but I muſt beg one thing of you before I ſet out.' 'What is that?' replied Guyot. 'It is, that during my abſence you never ſally out of the caſtle, nor open the barriers, whatever ſkirmiſhes the French may make, for you may loſe more than you can gain.' 'I will take care not to do it,' anſwered Guyot: 'we will remain ſhut up here, until your return or until we hear ſome news of you.' 'Indeed, my good uncle, I beg it of you, for we cannot vex them more than by keeping within our walls: as for their attacks and ſkirmiſhes, we do not value them.'

Within three days after, Aymerigot left the caſtle attended only by a page, and began his journey

journey without fear of the French. His intention was to bring back with him ſome bold companions, and raiſe the ſiege.

Although Aymerigot had quitted la Roche de Vandais, it was unknown to the beſiegers; for the garriſon could go in and out without danger from them.

There were daily ſkirmiſhes before the caſtle and at the barriers; and, about five or ſix days after the departure of Aymerigot, there was a grand aſſault made by the French, who were divided into three parties, all of which were engaged. Guyot du Sel was a good man at arms, and had long uſed them; but through arrogance, and neglecting to obſerve the orders of his nephew not to open the barriers nor to ſally forth on any account, he ſuffered as you will hear.

Three ſquires, two from Auvergne and one from Brittany, diſplayed great courage, and were pre-eminent at this attack at a part of the old walls very near the caſtle. The ſquires from Auvergne were called Richard de la Violette and Lubinot de Rochefort; the Breton was le Monadic, who, when made priſoner, at the taking of Ventadour, had attached himſelf to ſir William le Bouteiller. This aſſault laſted until night, and, though theſe ſquires gained renown, the beſiegers, in ſpite of their labour and pain, made no other profit.

The viſcount de Meaux determined, that at the next ſkirmiſh he would place an ambuſcade of twelve men at arms in an old grotto withoutſide the fort; and he told his men,—'Advance to ſkirmiſh

at

at the barriers; and if you ſhall perceive the garriſon inclined to make a ſally, as is likely enough for ſuch covetous perſons to do, retire gently on this ſide the ambuſh, when you will wheel round to renew the attack, and they, being thus ſurrounded, will be made priſoners or ſlain.'

The viſcount's plan was executed. Thoſe named for the ambuſcade were Lewis de Leſglinelle, Robert de Berthencourt, Vandelle, William de la Saulſoye, Peter de Saint Vidal, Gionnet de Villeracque, Peter de Col, Andrew de la Roche, John Salmage, with three others to make up the dozen of good men at arms, who poſted themſelves within the old grotto. Another party went to ſkirmiſh, under the command of the three before named ſquires: they were richly armed at all points, the more to tempt the avarice of the garriſon, and were only twelve in number.

When arrived at the barriers, they purpoſely began the attack moſt awkwardly, ſo that Guyot du Sel held them cheap, and ſaid to his companions,—'By Saint Marcel, we will make a ſally; for there are at the barriers a ſet of youngſters who, from their manner, do not ſeem much accuſtomed to the uſe of arms. We will teach them their uſe; and they cannot avoid being our priſoners. At theſe words, he had the barriers flung open, and ſallied forth, forgetful of his promiſe to Aymerigot. The great deſire he had to perform ſome deed of arms, and to gain a prize, induced him to act thus.

The French were much rejoiced to ſee the garriſon

riſon without the fort, and that Guyot du Sel was among the firſt: they retreated by little and little until they had paſſed the ambuſh, eagerly purſued by Guyot's party. When thoſe in ambuſh ſaw it was time, they quitted the grotto, and poſted themſelves on the road to the fort, ſhouting out 'Coucy for the viſcount!' and thus incloſed their front and rear.

Guyot du Sel, obſerving this, knew he had been in fault, and that it would be difficult for him to ſave himſelf, or to return to the fort. He began to retire towards the barriers, but was ſtrongly oppoſed. Why ſhould I lengthen my ſtory? They were all made priſoners, as it were in a trap, and led in triumph to the quarters of the viſcount and the other knights.

When the viſcount de Meaux ſaw Guyot du Sel, he aſked him 'where was Aymerigot Marcel?' for he thought he was in the caſtle. Guyot replied, 'he was ignorant where he was, for he had left the fort twelve days ago.' The knights, hearing this, concluded he was gone to ſeek for aid. Guyot du Sel and his fellow-priſoners were then ordered away; and the viſcount aſked the knights of Auvergne, 'what ſhould be done to theſe priſoners?' for he wiſhed to act from their deciſion. Sir William le Bouteiller anſwered,—'Sir, I certainly believe that Aymerigot Marcel is gone to perſuade the garriſons of other forts to come to his aſſiſtance: he will eaſily find, in ſpite of the truce, adventurers, who will join him in his wickedneſs, and they may fall on us ſome morning

morning or evening when we are unprepared to reſiſt them, and do us much damage: Aymerigot is very cunning, and of great wealth. Let us therefore tell Guyot du Sel to ſurrender la Roche de Vandais, and if he refuſe his conſent, that his own head, and thoſe of all his companions, ſhall inſtantly be ſacrificed.'

'This is good advice,' replied the viſcount; 'for, in truth, to obtain this fort are we come into the country. If we have not now Aymerigot Marcel, another time we may be more ſucceſsful.' Upon this, the viſcount, the lord de la Tour, ſir Robert Dauphin, ſir William le Bouteiller and their companions, advanced as near to the fort as they could, carrying with them Guyot du Sel and the other priſoners. The viſcount, addreſſing himſelf to Guyot as the captain, ſaid,—'Guyot, you, as well as your friends, who are now our priſoners, muſt know that, unleſs you will ſurrender to us the fort of la Roche de Vandais, we ſhall inſtantly order your heads to be cut off; but, if you will yield it up, we will allow you freely to depart whither you pleaſe. Now, conſider which you prefer, death or liberty.'

Guyot du Sel replied, 'My lord, I will do all I can to accommodate you,' and with this he advanced to the barriers to ſpeak with thoſe within the fort. You muſt know, that the remaining garriſon looked on themſelves as conquered; for they knew not how to act, nor whom to chooſe for their leader, ſince they had now loſt their two captains, the moſt able among them.

Guyot

Guyot du Sel had not ſooner explained his ſituation than they agreed to ſurrender on the terms, that they ſhould carry away with them all they were able, and be allowed one month to retire whither they pleaſed. This was inſtantly agreed to, and written and ſigned. The French, by the fortunate iſſue of the ſkirmiſh, became maſters of la Roche de Vandais: ſo true is it, that good or ill fortune in arms is the lot of perſeverance.

The whole country was much rejoiced on hearing of this ſurrender. The articles of the treaty with Guyot du Sel were punctually obſerved, and when the garriſon had packed up all they could carry, they had permiſſion to depart, and paſſports given them, to continue for one month.

The viſcount de Meaux and his knights abandoned la Roche de Vandais to the country people, who inſtantly ſet about demoliſhing it, and never left it until there did not remain one ſtone on another. The men at arms from Auvergne, who had joined the viſcount, now took leave of him, and returned to their homes. The viſcount permitted many of his own men to depart for Picardy: he himſelf went for la Rochelle, but ſtopped at Saint Jean d'Angely, to defend that part of Saintonge againſt pillagers, who, whenever they found a good opportunity, overran it, for his orders were to oppoſe them.

CHAP. XVI.

THE MESSENGERS FROM ENGLAND, HEARING OF THE SURRENDER OF LA ROCHE DE VANDAIS, TAKE LEAVE OF THE DUKE OF BERRY. ——AYMERIGOT RETIRES TO THE HOUSE OF A RELATION, CALLED TOURNEMINE, WHO BETRAYS HIM TO THE KING OF FRANCE.—— HE IS CARRIED TO PARIS, AND THERE BEHEADED AND HIS BODY QUARTERED.

YOU have heard how la Roche de Vandais was won, to the contentment of the ſurrounding country, for, had it been otherwiſe, it would have ſuffered much from the garriſon. News of this was carried to the duke of Berry at Cantelon, a a manor of his ſituated between Chartres and Montlehery, nine leagues from Paris; but he was indifferent about the matter, for he was become quite cool in regard to ſoliciting the king in favour of Aymerigot Marcel.

When Derby the herald heard of the ſurrender from the duke's knights, he ſaid to Cherbury, 'I have loſt one hundred francs, which Aymerigot had promiſed me.' 'For what? and how have you loſt them?' aſked the ſquire. 'In God's name,' ſaid Derby, 'la Roche de Vandais has ſurrendered: the French have conquered it. Let us take leave of the duke of Berry and return to England, for we have nothing further to do here.'

'Since

'Since it is ſo,' anſwered the ſquire, 'I agree to it.' They demanded leave of the duke to depart, who granted it, and gave them letters, to the king of England and the duke of Lancaſter, in anſwer to thoſe they had brought. On their departure, he preſented the herald with forty francs, and gave to the ſquire a handſome hackney.

On quitting the duke, they took the ſhorteſt road to Calais, and, I believe, went ſtraight to England.

News of the loſs of his fort was carried to Aymerigot Marcel, as he was raiſing troops to break up the ſiege. When he firſt heard it, he would have all the particulars told him. On learning that it had been occaſioned by an imprudent ſally Guyot du Sel had made on the French, he exclaimed,—'Ah, the old traitor! by Saint Marcel, if I had him here, I would ſlay him. He has diſgraced me and all my companions. On my departure, I had moſt poſitively ordered him not to quit the fort, whatever attempts the French might make, and he has done juſt the contrary. This loſs can never be recovered; nor do I know whither to make my retreat. The garriſons of Chaluçet and Donzac are determined to abide by the truce, and my companions are ſcattered abroad like diſcomfited perſons; but, if they were with me, I know not whither I could lead them. Conſidering all things, I am in a diſtreſſing ſituation: I have too greatly angered the king of France, the duke of Berry, and the barons and

commonalty of Auvergne, to expect any favour; for I have made war on them during the truce, thinking to gain, but I am now more likely to loſe every thing: I know not how to act. I wiſh at this moment that my wife, myſelf and fortune were in England; we there ſhould be ſafe; but how the devil are we to get thither? for I ſhall be robbed of my wealth twenty times before I can arrive at the ſea-ſhore. All the roads through Poitou, Normandy and Picardy, that lead to the ſea, are well guarded. I have forfeited my life; that is clear; and, if I am taken and ſent to Paris, ſhall be puniſhed accordingly, and loſe my all. My ſafeſt plan will be to make for Bordeaux, and to have my wealth ſent thither by little and little, and then to remain there as long as the truce holds; for I am in hopes that, after theſe truces, a curſe on them! the war will be renewed with more vigour than ever between France and England. The free companions will, by that time, have ſpent their former gains, and be eager to repleniſh their purſes.'

Thus did Aymerigot Marcel converſe with himſelf: he was caſt down and ſorrowful, and knew not from whom to aſk advice, nor whether to return to Auvergne, or go to Bordeaux and ſend for his wife, and have his fortune brought thither by little at a time. If he had followed this plan, he would have done well; but he acted otherwiſe, and, as the event will ſhew, ſuffered for it. It is thus Fortune treats her favourites: when ſhe has raiſed them to the higheſt point of her wheel, ſhe

ſhe ſuddenly plunges them in the dirt: witneſs Aymerigot Marcel. The fooliſh fellow was worth, as was believed in Auvergne, more than one hundred thouſand francs in money, which he loſt in one day, together with his life. I therefore ſay, that dame Fortune played him one of her tricks, which ſhe had played to ſeveral before, and ſhe will do the ſame to many after him.

Aymerigot, in his tribulations, bethought himſelf of a couſin-german he had in Auvergne, a ſquire called Tournemine, to whom he reſolved to apply, and aſk his advice. This he did, and, only attended by a page, entered the caſtle of his couſin. He thought to be well received there, on account of his relationſhip, but was diſappointed; for this ſquire was not in the good graces of the duke of Berry, who indeed hated him, as the ſquire knew well. He was afraid of the conſequences, and reſolved, on ſeeing his couſin Aymerigot enter his caſtle, to arreſt him, and inform the duke of Berry what he had done, and offer, if he would forgive him and be on good terms for the future, to deliver up Aymerigot Marcel, for him to do with him as he ſhould pleaſe. All this he executed; for, when Aymerigot entered the caſtle, he was ſhewn into a chamber, when, having pulled off his ſword and cleaned himſelf, he aſked the ſervants, 'Where is my couſin Tournemine?' 'He is in his chamber,' replied the ſervants, who already knew their maſter's deſign: 'come and ſee him.' 'With all my heart,' ſaid Aymerigot. Having put on a new dreſs, and laid aſide his coat

of mail, which he uſually wore, he ſaid to the ſervants. 'Come, let us go to my couſin Tournemine, for it is a long time ſince I have ſeen him.'

They conducted him ſtraight to his chamber, and, on entering it, Aymerigot ſaluted him, ſuſpecting no evil: but Tournemine ſaid,—'How is this, Aymerigot? Who has ſent for you? and what has brought you hither? You wiſh to diſhonour me. I therefore arreſt you as my priſoner; for I ſhould not otherwiſe loyally acquit myſelf to the crown of France, nor to my lord of Berry: you are a wicked traitor, who have broken the truce, and ſhall ſuffer for it: it is on your account the duke of Berry hates me mortally, but, through your means, I will make my peace; for, dead or alive, you ſhall be given up to him, and never, on any other account, ſhall you leave this caſtle.'

This ſpeech aſtoniſhed Aymerigot, who replied,—'Why, Tournemine, I am your couſin. Are you in earneſt in what you ſay? or do you do it to try me? I came hither, in full confidence, to ſee you and aſk your advice, and I meet with this cruel and harſh reception.' 'I know not what you propoſed for yourſelf,' anſwered Tournemine, 'but I ſhall certainly execute what I have intimated to you,' and then laid hands on him; his ſervants, who knew what they were to do, advanced and ſeized him. Thus was Aymerigot taken without a poſſibility of making any defence; for, as I have ſaid, he had diſarmed himſelf; nor could any entreaties prevent Tournemine from ordering

ordering him heavy fetters on his legs, and cauſing him to be confined in a ſtrong tower under ſafe-guards.

When this was done, he had the gates of the caſtle locked, taking himſelf the keys, ordering his ſervants, under pain of death, not to go near the gates unleſs ſent by him. He then wrote letters to the duke of Berry, to ſay he had made Aymerigot Marcel his priſoner; and, if he would forgive him and make a ſolid peace, he would give him up to his pleaſure. When the letters were finiſhed and ſealed, he called to him his moſt confidential ſervant, and ſaid,—'Set out inſtantly for Paris, and deliver theſe letters to the duke of Berry: recommend me to him, and be ſure not to return without anſwers.' The varlet took the letters, mounted an active horſe, and rode to Paris, where the duke of Berry was. On being admitted, he preſented the letters from his maſter, Tournemine. The duke, having opened and read them, ſaid ſmiling to his knights,—'Would you like to hear news? Aymerigot Marcel is caught: his couſin-german Tournemine, as he writes me word, holds him in priſon.' The knights replied, —'My lord, this is excellent news for Auvergne and Limouſin; for they have had, for a long time, a bad neighbour in Aymerigot. He has done ſo much miſchief that, if you pleaſe, he ſhall make his end on a gibbet, for he deſerves no favour nor pardon.' 'I know not,' ſaid the duke, 'what the king or his council may wiſh to do with him: I ſhall talk with them on the ſubject.'

Not long after this converſation, the duke took boat and croſſed the Seine to the Louvre, where the king and his council were. He related the intelligence he had received, and gave them the letters of Tournemine to read, which afforded ſatisfaction to all. The lords ſaid, that ſuch pillagers always came to a diſgraceful death, and that ſooner or later it awaited them. It was determined, that the duke of Berry ſhould undertake the management of this buſineſs, and order the ſénéſchal of Auvergne to fetch Aymerigot, and bring him to Paris, where he ſhould be confined in the Baſtille, at the gate of St. Anthony, and delivered over to the provoſt of the Châtelet, who would take good care of him. It was alſo reſolved, that on account of the agreeable ſervice Tournemine had now done to the crown of France, all his former miſdeeds ſhould be forgiven, and a pardon granted by letters patent, which Tournemine's ſervant brought back with him, and by it pleaſed his maſter greatly, for in them he confided.

It was not long before the ſénéſchal of Auvergne, by an order from the duke of Berry, came to the caſtle of Tournemine, and had Aymerigot Marcel delivered up to him: who was thunderſtruck at thus finding himſelf in the hands of his enemies. Why ſhould I make a long ſtory of it? The ſénéſchal had him eſcorted by a body of men at arms through the country, and croſſed the Seine and Marne at Charenton. Thence he conducted him to the caſtle of the Baſtille, and delivered him

him to the charge of the viſcount d'Achy, who was at that time governor of it.

He was not long detained there, but given up to the provoſt of the Châtelet, who carried him thither. True it is, that he offered ſixty thouſand francs for his pardon, but no one would have any thing to do with him: they told him the king was rich enough, and wanted not his money.

From the time he was delivered to the provoſt, there was no delay in his trial, when he was condemned to a ſhameful death, as a traitor to the crown of France.

He was firſt carried in a cart to the pillory in the market-place, and turned round within it ſeveral times. His different crimes were then read aloud, for which he was to receive death. Sir William le Trun* was by his ſide a long time, and talked much with him, on the affairs of Auvergne as it was ſuppoſed, and to learn the truth reſpecting ſeveral captains of forts, whether they had been aſſociates in his wickedneſs. This was certainly known to the lords, but I never could gain information reſpecting it. His head was cut off, and his four quarters affixed over four different gates of Paris. Such was the end of Aymerigot Marcel; but I know not what became of his wife, or of his wealth.

---

*. In the MSS. it is ſir William le Bouteiller, which I ſhould think more probable.

CHAP. XVII.

THE CHRISTIAN LORDS WEIGH ANCHOR, AND LEAVE THE ISLAND OF COMINO, IN ORDER TO LAY SIEGE TO THE TOWN OF AFRICA.—THE MANNER IN WHICH THEY CONDUCT THEMSELVES.

I HAVE dwelt very long on the ſubject of Aymerigot Marcel, in detailing his actions, that I might illuſtrate his life and death; for in ſuch a hiſtory as this, both good and bad muſt be ſpoken of, that they may ſerve as an excitement or warning in times to come. Had Aymerigot turned his mind to virtue, he would have done much good, for he was an able man at arms and of great courage; but, having acted in a different manner, he came to a diſgraceful death.

We will return to the noble enterpriſe the knights of France and other countries had undertaken againſt Africa, and continue our narrative from the place where we left off. It was, I believe, at the iſland of Comino that the knights had aſſembled, after the great ſtorm in the gulph of Lyon, to wait for thoſe who had ſeparated from the fleet, as that iſland was but thirty miles from Africa, whither they were bound. They remained there nine days, and, when recovered from their fatigues, they addreſſed the maſters of the galleys as follows: 'Gentlemen, we are now

on

on the neareſt land to the ſtrong town of Africa, whither if it pleaſe God, we will go, and beſiege it. We muſt therefore conſult with you how we may enter the harbour and diſembark. We propoſe to ſend in advance our ſmaller veſſels, called brigandines, to amuſe the enemy, while we remain at the mouth of the harbour: on the following day we will, at our leiſure, land, through God's grace, and encamp ourſelves as near the town as poſſible, out of the reach of their bricolles*: the Genoeſe croſs-bows ſhall be drawn up, and ready for defence or attack. We ſuppoſe that, on our debarkation, a multitude of your young ſquires will demand to be knighted, for increaſe of honour and advancement. Inſtruct them gently how they ought to act, for you are very capable of doing it; and know, gentlemen, that we are well inclined to acquit ourſelves handſomely towards you; and, to ſhew our eagerneſs to annoy the enemy, we ſhall take every poſſible pains that this town of Africa may be won. It has done you too great damage to be longer endured, and is, beſide, the key of the empire of Barbary and the ſurrounding kingdoms of Africa, Morocco and Bugia. Should God, of his goodneſs, permit us to conquer it, all the Saracens will tremble, as far as Nubia and Syria, and we ſhall be every where talked of. With the aſſiſtance of the princes of Chriſtendom, who are the neareſt to us, we may reinforce it with

* Bricolles,—machines to throw ſtones: a ſort of ſling.—Du Cange.

men

men, and victual it again; ſo that, if once we gain poſſeſſion, it will become a place for all knights and ſquires to adventure themſelves in arms againſt the enemies of God, and conquer their lands.'

'My lords,' replied the maſters of the veſſels, 'we ſhall never pretend to teach you how to act, but give our opinions with all modeſty and humility; for you are too noble, wiſe and valiant, for us to pretend to lay down rules for your conduct.' The lord de Coucy ſaid,—'We ſhould, however, wiſh to have your opinions, for we have obſerved nothing but what is praiſe-worthy in you; and, as it is you who have brought us hither, to accompliſh deeds of arms, we ſhall never act without having your advice.'

Such were the converſations held in the iſland of Comino, in the preſence of the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Eu, and ſome of the great barons of France, with the captains of the Genoeſe veſſels, before they ſailed for the coaſt of Africa.

When all was ready, and the men at arms had re-imbarked on board their galleys, with a good will to meet their enemies the Saracens, the admiral gave orders for the trumpets to ſound, and the fleet to get under weigh. The ſea was now calm, and the weather fine: it was a pleaſure to ſee the rowers force their veſſels through its ſmooth ſurface, which ſeemed to delight in bearing theſe Chriſtians to the ſhores of the infidels. Their fleet was numerous and well ordered; and it was a fine ſight to view their various banners

and

and pennons, emblazoned with their arms, fluttering with the gentle gales, and glittering in the ſun.

Late in the evening, the Chriſtians ſaw the towers of Africa, as pointed out to them by the ſailors, which, as they advanced, opened more to their view. Every one was rejoiced at this ſight, and not without cauſe, as they had in part accompliſhed the object of their voyage. If the Chriſtians, on thus ſeeing Africa, converſed much concerning the war they were about to commence, the Saracens, who had as plainly obſerved them from their town, and were on the watch, did the ſame. They were aſtoniſhed at the great number of veſſels, of all deſcriptions, and concluded they had a very large army on board, to beſiege the town. They were not caſt down with this, for they knew the place was ſtrong, well fortified with towers, and plentifully ſtored with artillery and proviſions.

On their firſt noticing the fleet, they ſounded, according to cuſtom, a number of bells on the towers, to alarm and inform the country that an enemy was on the coaſt. There were encamped near the town a large body of barbarians and infidels, whom the kings of Tunis and Bugia had ſent thither to defend the coaſt, and prevent the Chriſtians from making any progreſs into the interior of the country.

The noiſe of the trumpets and drums announced to them the arrival of the Chriſtians; and, in conſequence, they formed their army according

to

to their manner, and ſent ſome of the ableſt captains to the ſhore to obſerve the motions of the enemy, and the manner of their debarkation. They alſo poſted their moſt expert men at arms on the towers and battlements of the town, that they might not be taken by ſurpriſe; for it was ſtrong enough to reſiſt every thing but a long ſiege, if they were on their guard.

As I, John Froiſſart, the author of theſe chronicles, was never in Africa, I ſought all the information I could from thoſe knights and ſquires who had been on this expedition, and made ſeveral journies to Calais to learn the truth of all that had paſſed*. [Having inquired as to the ſize and form of the town of Africa, ſome who had been there figured it out to me, and ſaid it was in the form of a bow, like to Calais, extending its arms towards the ſea. This town of Africa, at the time the lords of France and other nations were before it with an anxious deſire to win it, was wonderfully ſtrong, ſurrounded with high walls at proper diſtances: the entrance of the harbour was defended by a tower larger than the reſt, on which was placed a bricolle to caſt large ſtones and quarrels, with which it was well provided.

When the Chriſtians approached the harbour, the walls of the town ſeemed to be hung with cloths or tapeſtry, ſomewhat ſimilar in appearance

* All within theſe marks [ ] is additional matter, omitted by Sauvage and Verard, from MS. No. 4379, Bib. Harl. in the Muſeum, and from a MS. in the Hafod Library, which is preciſely the ſame.

to

to coverlids of beds. They caſt anchor about one league diſtant from the port, where they remained until the morrow. The night was clear and ſerene, for it was the month of July, about Magdalen-tide; and they made themſelves comfortable, rejoicing that, through God's pleaſure, they had ſo far ſucceeded as to have the town of Africa now before them.

The Saracens, who were on the oppoſite ſhore obſerving the Chriſtian fleet, held this night a council on their future mode of proceeding, for they knew the town would be beſieged. They thus converſed among themſelves: Our enemies are now arrived: they will, if they can, land and lay ſiege to Africa, which is the key to the adjoining kingdoms. We muſt, therefore, conſider well our plans for oppoſing them; otherwiſe we ſhall be greatly blamed, and eſpecially if we ſhould not at the firſt diſpute their landing.' It was propoſed by a valiant Saracen, called Mandifer, to reſiſt their landing, as being the moſt honourable, and to oppoſe them inſtantly with their whole force, or they would probably have fault found with them. This was ſtrongly ſupported by many, as it ſeemed the moſt courageous plan; when an ancient Saracen began to ſpeak, who had great influence among them, as he ſhewed. This lord came from a town in Africa called Maldages, and his name was Belluis. He gave his opinion quite contrary to that of Mandifer, and ſupported it with the following reaſons:—' Gentlemen, we are ſent hither to guard the coaſt and defend this country;

country; but we have had no orders from the kings of Tunis or of Bugia to attack our enemies without having maturely conſidered the conſequences. What I have to propoſe, I will maintain by ſuch reaſons as theſe: Firſt, you muſt ſuppoſe that this army of Chriſtians has been long in preparation, and is provided with all things neceſſary. Their captains, you may alſo believe, are perfect men at arms, as able in council as in the field, with the greateſt ardour to perform deeds of arms. If we meet them on the ſhore, they will advance their Genoeſe croſs-bows, for you may be aſſured they have brought nnmbers of them. It will be againſt them who have ſuch excellent croſs-bows that we muſt ſupport the firſt attack; and we are not armed nor have we ſhields to guard us againſt their arrows: our men, finding themſelves wounded, will draw back and refuſe the combat, ſo that theſe Genoeſe will make good their landing in ſpite of us. Their men at arms, deſirous of diſplaying their courage, will leap from their boats, and, obſerving our diſorder, will attack us with lances, and gain a victory: ſhould this happen, the town of Africa is irrecoverably loſt for any thing we can do to prevent it. Thoſe within will be ſo much diſcouraged by our defeat, that before our men can be rallied, the place will be taken by ſtorm or capitulation, and be ſo well guarded that we ſhall have the greateſt difficulty to regain it. The French, and thoſe with them are very expert and ſubtle in arms. I therefore maintain, that it will be more to our advantage that the enemy

ſhould

ſhould be ignorant of our force at the onſet; for at this moment we have not a ſufficiency to offer them battle, though our ſtrength is daily increaſing. I adviſe, that we ſuffer them to diſembark at their eaſe; for, as they have no horſes to advance into the country, they will remain where they land ſuſpicious of our intentions.] The town of Africa is not afraid of them, nor of their attacks, for it is tolerably ſtrong, and well provided with every thing. The air is now warm, and will be hotter. They will be expoſed to the heat of the ſun, while we ſhall be in the ſhade. Their proviſions will be deſtroyed, without hopes of having a ſupply, if they make any long ſtay, and we ſhall have abundance from our own country: we will frequently beat up their quarters; and, ſhould they be unfortunate in theſe ſkirmiſhes, they will be worn down. We muſt avoid all general engagements, otherwiſe we cannot conquer them; but we ſhall do it by this plan, and truſting to the climate, which is ſo contrary to the nature of their conſtitutions. [They will not have any reinforcements, and we ſhall have many. The extreme heat of the ſun, and the fatigue they will undergo from being always armed in fear of us, will very ſoon bring on diſorders which will carry numbers to the grave, and thus ſhall we be revenged without ſtriking a blow.] Such is the plan I propoſe; and, if I knew of any better, I would lay it before you.'

All thoſe in the council who had been uſed to arms adopted the advice the old Saracen lord had given. It was in conſequence forbidden, under

pain of death, for the army to attack or ſkirmiſh with the Chriſtians on the ſea-ſhore, but they were ordered to remain quietly in their quarters, and ſuffer them to land and encamp themſelves without any oppoſition. None dared infringe theſe orders. They ſent a body of their archers into the town of Africa, to aſſiſt in its defence, and never made any movement until the morrow, ſo that the country ſeemed uninhabited.

The Chriſtians having lain this night, as I have ſaid, at anchor at the mouth of the harbour, made themſelves ready the next day, which was a clear bright morning, for approaching the town, being very deſirous to land. Trumpets and clarions began to ſound and make a loud noiſe on board the different galleys and ſhips. When it was about nine o'clock, and the Chriſtians had drank a cup, and partaken of ſoup made of Grecian or Malmſey wines, with which they had abundantly provided themſelves, to cheer their hearts and raiſe their ſpirits, they began to execute the plan they had laid down while at the iſland of Comino. They ſent, as it ſeems to me, ſome light veſſels called brigandines, armed with bricolles and canons, firſt towards the harbour. When they were properly drawn up in array, they entered the haven, and ſaluted the town with arrows and ſtones; but the walls were hung with wet carpeting to deaden their blows. Theſe brigandines entered the port without damage, and were followed by the galleys and other veſſels in ſuch handſome order as to make a pleaſant ſhow.

In

In turning into the harbour, there was a large caſtle with towers, and on one larger than the reſt was placed a bricolle, for the defence of the place, which was not idle, but threw quarrels among the fleet. On each of the towers on the walls was a bricolle which ſhot well; and, to ſay the truth, the Saracens had laid in ſtores for a long time, from the expectation of a ſiege.

When the Chriſtians entered the port of Africa, to diſembark, the weather was ſo beautiful, and their order ſo well preſerved, that it was delightful to ſee it. Their trumpets and clarions made the air reſound, and were echoed back by the waves. Many knights both from France and from other countries now diſplayed their banners, and ſeveral knights were created. The firſt of whom was John lord de Ligny, in Hainault: he was knighted by his couſin, ſir Henry d'Antoing; and the lord de Ligny there firſt diſplayed his banner, which was emblazoned with his arms on a field or, having a bend gules. He was accompanied by his couſin-german, the lord d'Havreth in Hainault.

All the knights and ſquires diſembarked in view of the Saracens, on a Wedneſday, the vigil of Magdalen-day*, in the year of grace 1390, and and as they landed, encamped according to orders from the marſhals. Thus they took poſſeſſion of the land of their enemies, who, noticing their camp, could not avoid highly praiſing the good

* Magdalen-day,—the 22d July.

order of it. Thoſe in the larger galleys, that could not lie near the ſhore, were put into boats and conveyed to land, under the banner of our Lady.

The Saracens, both within and without the town, allowed them to land peaceably, for they were not in numbers ſufficient to oppoſe them; and the French advanced with diſplayed banners, on which were emblazoned their arms, to the places marked out for their lodgings by the marſhals.

The duke of Bourbon, as commander in chief, was lodged in the centre of his army, with all honour, and powerfully guarded. The device on his banner, powdered over with flower de luces, was a figure of the Virgin Mary in white, ſeated in the centre, and an eſcutcheon of Bourbon at her feet.

I will name thoſe lords of rank who were quartered on the right of the duke, looking towards the town: firſt, ſir William de la Trimouille and his brother, with a pennon; the lord de Bordenay, with a banner; ſir Helion de Lignac, with a pennon; the lord de Tours, the ſame. Then were placed the Hainaulters, whoſe ſtandard bore the device of the lord William of Hainault, at that time count d'Oſtrevant, eldeſt ſon of duke Albert of Bavaria, count of Holland, Hainault and Zealand, which device was a harrow or, on a field gules. There were the lord d'Havreth, with his banner; the lord de Ligny, with his; and then the lord Philip, count d'Artois, with his banner; the lord de Matheſelon, with his banner; the lord de Calan, with a pennon:

pennon; the ſénéſchal d'Eu, with the ſame; the lord de Linieres, with a banner; the lord de Thim, with the ſame; the lord d'Ameval, with the ſame; ſir Walter de Chaſtillon, with a pennon; ſir John de Châteaumorant, with a banner; the brother to the marſhal de Sancerre, with a pennon; the lord de Coucy, with his banner, and better ſupported than any, except the duke of Bourbon; the lord de Licques, with a pennon; ſir Stephen de Sancerre, with the ſame; and then the pennon of the king of France, blazoned with his device: beſide it, was ſir John le Barrois, with his pennon ornamented with his arms; ſir William Morles, with his banner; the lord de Longueval, with a pennon; ſir John de Roye, with a banner; the lord de Bours, with a pennon; the viſcount d'Auſnay, a banner; and ſir John de Vienne, admiral of France, with his banner.

Thoſe on the left hand of the duke of Bourbon, were the lord d'Auſemont, with a banner; ſir John Beaufort, baſtard to the duke of Lancaſter, a banner; ſir John le Bouteiller, an Engliſhman, a pennon; ſir John de Crama, a banner; the ſouldich de l'Eſtrade, a pennon; ſir John de Harcourt, a banner; the lord Berald, count de Clermont, and dauphin of Auvergne, a banner, and with good array; ſir Hugh Dauphin, his brother, a pennon; the lord de Berthencourt, a pennon; the lord de Pierre Buffiere, a banner; the lord de Saint Semere, a banner; the lord de Louvart, marſhal of the army, a pennon; the begue de

Beauſſe, a pennon; the lord de Louvy, a banner; ſir Gerard de Louvy, his brother, a pennon; the lord de Saint-Germain, a banner; and then the pennon on a ſtandard, with the device of the duke of Bourbon; the lord Philip de Bar, a banner; ſir Lewis de Poitiers, a pennon; ſir Robert de Galobre the ſame; the viſcount de Les, a banner; the lord de Nogent, the ſame; the lord de Villeneuve, a pennon; ſir William de Moulin, the ſame; the lord de Longwy, a pennon; ſir Angorget d'Amboiſe, the ſame; ſir Alain de la Champaigne, a pennon.

All theſe banners and pennons that I have named were placed in front of the camp, facing the town of Africa; but there were many knights and ſquires, of great courage and ability, who were quartered in the fields, whom I cannot name, and, if I could, it would take up too much place, for they were, in the whole, fourteen thouſand, all gentlemen. This was a handſome army, able to perform many gallant deeds, and ſupport a hard warfare, if the Saracens had ventured an attack, which they did not, contenting themſelves this day with throwing large bolts, not meaning to act contrary to their plan.

When the Chriſtians were encamped, it was neceſſary for them to be careful of the proviſion they had brought, for they could not now venture to forage in this country, nor collect wood nor boughs for huts, as they would have run many riſks, by fooliſhly venturing themſelves for ſuch objects.

The knights were lodged under tents and pavilions

vilions of cloth, which they had procured at Genoa. The Genoeſe croſs-bows formed two wings, incloſing within them the principal lords, and, from their numbers, they occupied a great deal of ground, turning towards the ſea-ſhore. All their proviſion was on board the veſſels, and there were boats continually employed in bringing different articles from them, as they were wanted.

When the inhabitants of the neighbouring iſlands, ſuch as Sicily and others, as well as thoſe in the kingdom of Naples, la Puglia and Calabria, heard the Chriſtians were laying ſiege to Africa, they exerted themſelves to ſupply them with every ſort of proviſion; ſome from a deſire of gain, others from affection to the Genoeſe. From Candia were brought good ſweet wine and grenaches*, to comfort and refreſh them, without which they could not long have ſupported their fatigues. They were a very large body of men, who daily conſumed much in eating and drinking. However, theſe purveyances did not come regularly; for at times the ſupply was moſt abundant, at others, they were in great diſtreſs from want.

* Grenaches. 'One of our ancient poets of the fourteenth century mentions, under the year 1315, Greek wine and wine de Grenache. This laſt, which, ſince Rouſſillon has formed part of France, is become a national wine, was then eſteemed a foreign wine. It is probably that which Froiſſart calls Galvache, Garnache, or Galrigache.'—*Vie Privée des François*, vol. iii.

CHAP. XVIII.

THE CONDUCT OF THE SARACENS DURING THE SIEGE OF THE TOWN OF AFRICA.—THEY SEND TO DEMAND FROM THE FRENCH THE CAUSE OF THEIR MAKING WAR AGAINST THEM.

I WILL ſay ſomething of the Saracens, for it is but juſt they ſhould be equally ſpoken of as the Chriſtians, that the truth may be more apparent. You muſt know that theſe infidels had, for a long time, been menaced by the Genoeſe, and were expecting the town of Africa to be beſieged, in which they were not diſappointed. They had made preparations for reſiſtance, when they heard of the arrival of the Chriſtian fleet, an event that had been long looked for by the neighbouring nations; for they are not prudent nor well adviſed, who fear not their enemies, however ſmall they may be. The Saracens, however, do not hold the Chriſtians cheap: on the contrary, they conſider them as men of courage and enterpriſe, and much fear them.

The better to reſiſt their enemies, they aſſembled the moſt experienced warriors from the kingdoms of Bugia, Morocco and Tunis, in which laſt the town of Africa is ſituated, and encamped on the downs near the ſea ſhore. They took advantage of a large and thick wood in their rear, to

to avoid any danger from ambuſcades or ſkirmiſhes on that ſide.

The Saracens ſhewed much ability in thus poſting themſelves. They amounted, according to the eſtimate of able men at arms, to thirty thouſand archers and ten thouſand horſe. Others thought they were more; but their exact numbers were unknown, for the Chriſtians ſuppoſed many were lodged in the wood. They were very numerous, for they were in their own country, and could come and go from their army at their pleaſure without danger. They received continual ſupplies of freſh proviſion, that was brought on the backs of camels.

The ſecond day after the Chriſtians had landed, the Saracens, about dawn, came to attack the camp, ſir Henry d'Antoing having the command of the guard of two hundred men at arms and one thouſand Genoeſe croſs-bows. The ſkirmiſh laſted better than two hours, and many gallant deeds were done in ſhooting and thruſting the lance, for there was not any engagement with the ſword hand to hand. The Saracens did not fool-hardily riſk themſelves, but fought with valour and more prudence than the Chriſtians.

When they had ſkirmiſhed ſome time, the Saracens retreated; for the army began to be in motion, and ſome of the French barons had come to witneſs the action, and obſerve the manner of their enemies fighting, that they might be prepared to meet them another time. The Saracens retired to their camp, as did the Chriſtians to theirs;

theirs; but, during the whole time of this ſiege of Africa, the Chriſtians were never left quiet, for their camp was every night or morning attacked by the enemy.

Among the Saracens was a young knight, called Agadinquor Oliferne, excellently mounted on a beautiful courſer, which he managed as he willed, and which, when he galloped, ſeemed to fly with him. From his gallantry, he ſhewed he was a good man at arms; and, when he rode abroad, he had with him three javelins, well feathered, which he dexterouſly flung, according to the cuſtom of his country. He was completely armed in black, and had a kind of white napkin wrapped round his head. His ſeat on horſeback was graceful; and, from the vigour and gallantry of his actions, the Chriſtians judged he was excited thereto by his affection to a young lady of the country. True it is, he moſt ſincerely loved the daughter of the king of Tunis, who, according to the report of ſome Genoeſe merchants who had ſeen her, was very handſome, and the heireſs of his kingdom. This knight, called Agadinquor, was the ſon of duke Oliferne; but I know not if he ever married this lady. I heard that, during the ſiege, he performed many handſome feats of arms, to teſtify his love, which the French knights ſaw with pleaſure, and would willingly have ſurrounded him; but, he rode with ſuch activity and ſkill, that all their efforts were vain.

The Chriſtian lords were very anxious to make ſome Saracens priſoners, to learn from them the real

real ſtate of their army; but they were ſo cautious, that they could not ſuccced, and, having noticed their intent, the Saracen chiefs gave orders accordingly. The Saracens were much afraid of the Genoeſe croſs-bows: they ſhielded themſelves as well as they could againſt their bolts, but they are not armed ſo ſtrongly as the Chriſtians; for they know not the art to forge armour like theirs, nor have they workmen who could make ſuch. Iron and ſteel are not common among them; and they wear light targets hanging on their necks, covered with boiled leather from Capadocia, that no ſpear can penetrate, if the leather has not been overboiled. Their manner of fighting, according to what I heard, was to advance on the Chriſtians, and ſhoot a volley of arrows at the Genoeſe the moment they made their appearance, and then to fall down under ſhelter of their ſhields, by which they avoided the bolts from the croſs-bows, that went over them: they then roſe, and either ſhot more arrows, or lanced their javelins with much dexterity.

Thus for the ſpace of nine weeks that the ſiege laſted were continual ſkirmiſhes made; and on both ſides many were killed and wounded, more eſpecially ſuch as ventured too raſhly. The Chriſtians imitated the Saracens by avoiding a cloſe combat; and the lords from France and other countries took delight in their manner of fighting, for, to ſay the truth, novelty is always pleaſing. The young lords of theſe infidels were greatly ſtruck with the glittering armour and emblazoned banners

banners and pennons of their enemies, and, when returned to their camp, they converſed much about them. They were, however, aſtoniſhed at one thing, which I will now relate. The Saracens within the town of Africa were anxious to know on what pretence the Chriſtians had come with ſo large an army to make war on them; and, to learn the reaſons, they reſolved as I was told, in council, to ſend a perſon that could ſpeak Genoeſe, and gave him the following orders, "Go and take the road to the camp of the Chriſtians, [and manage, before thou returneſt, to ſpeak with ſome lords, in their army,] and demand, in our name, why they have brought ſo powerful a force againſt us, and taken poſſeſſion of the lands of the king of Africa, who has not done any thing to offend them. True it is that, in former times, we were at war with the Genoeſe, but that ſhould no way concern them; for they come from very diſtant countries, and the Genoeſe are our neighbours. Our cuſtom has been, excepting in times of truce, to ſeize mutually all we can from each other."

Having received theſe inſtructions, the meſſenger departed and rode on to the camp. The firſt perſon he met was a Genoeſe, to whom he ſaid that he was ſent by the Saracens to ſpeak with ſome baron from France. The Genoeſe, to whom he had addreſſed himſelf, was called Antonio Marchi, a centurion of croſs-bows, who took him under his care, to his great joy, and conducted him inſtantly to the duke of Bourbon and the lord de Coucy. They both liſtened very attentively,

tively, and what they did not underſtand the centurion interpreted in very good French.

When he had finiſhed all he had been ordered to ſay, he aſked for an anſwer. The French lords told him he ſhould have one as ſoon as they had conſidered the purport of his meſſage. Twelve of the greateſt barons of the army aſſembled in the duke of Bourbon's tent, and the meſſenger and interpreter being called in, the laſt was ordered to tell him from the lords preſent, 'that in conſequence of their anceſtors having crucified and put to death the Son of GOD, called JESUS CHRIST, a true prophet, without any cauſe or juſt reaſon, they were come to retaliate on them for this infamous and unjuſt judgment. Secondly, they were unbaptiſed, and infidels in the faith to the holy Virgin, mother of JESUS CHRIST, and had no creed of their own. For theſe and other cauſes, they held the Saracens and their whole ſect as enemies, and were come to revenge the injuries they had done to their GOD and faith, and would to this effect daily exert themſelves to the utmoſt of their power.'

When the meſſenger had received this anſwer, he departed from the army unmoleſted, and returned to report to his maſters what you have juſt read. The Saracens laughed heartily at hearing it, and ſaid, they made aſſertions without proofs, for it was the Jews who had crucified JESUS CHRIST, and not them. Things remained on the former footing: the ſiege was continued, and each army on its guard.

CHAP.

was exceedingly hot; for it was the month of Auguſt, when the ſun is in its greateſt force, and that country was warmer than France, from being nearer the ſun, and from the heat of the ſands. The wines the beſiegers were ſupplied with from la Puglia and Calabria were fiery, and hurtful to the conſtitutions of the French, many of whom ſuffered ſeverely by fevers, from the heating quality of their liquors. I know not how the Chriſtians were enabled to bear the fatigues in ſuch a climate, where ſweet water was difficult to be had. They, however, had much reſource in the wells they dug; for there were upwards of two hundred ſunk, through the ſands, along the ſhore; but, at times, even this water was muddy and heated. They were frequently diſtreſſed for proviſion, for the ſupply was irregular, from Sicily and the other iſlands: at times they had abundance, at other times they were in want. The healthy comforted the ſick, and thoſe who had proviſion ſhared it with ſuch as had none; for in this campaign they were all as brothers.

The lord de Coucy, in particular, was beloved by every gentleman: he was kind to all, and behaved himſelf by far more graciouſly, in all reſpects, than the duke of Bourbon, who was proud and haughty, and never converſed with the knights and ſquires from foreign countries in the ſame agreeable manner the lord de Coucy did.

The duke was accuſtomed to ſit croſs-legged the greater part of the day before his pavilion; and thoſe who had any thing to ſay to him were obliged

proceed, and ſtood ſtill, theſe ladies keeping ſteadily before them. The Genoeſe croſs-bows had brought with them a dog, as I heard, from beyond ſea, but whence no one could tell, nor did he belong to any particular perſon. This dog had been very uſeful to them; for the Saracens never came to ſkirmiſh, but by his noiſe he awakened the army, and as every one now knew that whenever the dog barked the Saracens were come, or on their road, they prepared themſelves inſtantly: in conſequence of this, the Genoeſe called him the dog of our Lady. This night, the dog was not idle, but made a louder noiſe than uſual, and ran firſt to the main guard, which was under the command of the lord de Torcy, a Normand, and ſir Henry d'Antoing. As during the night all ſounds are more eaſily heard, the whole army was in motion, and properly prepared to receive the Saracens, who they knew were approaching.

This was the fact; but the Virgin Mary and her company, having the Chriſtians under their care, watched over them; and this night they received no harm, for the Saracens were afraid to advance, and returned the way they had come. The Chriſtians were more attentive to their future guards. The ſaracen knights and ſquires, within the town, were much caſt down at the ſight they had ſeen, more eſpecially thoſe who were advanced near this company of ladies. While, on the other hand, the Chriſtians were greatly exerting themſelves to win the place, which was courageouſly defended. At this period, the weather

was

was exceedingly hot; for it was the month of Auguſt, when the ſun is in its greateſt force, and that country was warmer than France, from being nearer the ſun, and from the heat of the ſands. The wines the beſiegers were ſupplied with from la Puglia and Calabria were fiery, and hurtful to the conſtitutions of the French, many of whom ſuffered ſeverely by fevers, from the heating quality of their liquors. I know not how the Chriſtians were enabled to bear the fatigues in ſuch a climate, where ſweet water was difficult to be had. They, however, had much reſource in the wells they dug; for there were upwards of two hundred ſunk, through the ſands, along the ſhore; but, at times, even this water was muddy and heated. They were frequently diſtreſſed for proviſion, for the ſupply was irregular, from Sicily and the other iſlands: at times they had abundance, at other times they were in want. The healthy comforted the ſick, and thoſe who had proviſion ſhared it with ſuch as had none; for in this campaign they were all as brothers.

The lord de Coucy, in particular, was beloved by every gentleman: he was kind to all, and behaved himſelf by far more graciouſly, in all reſpects, than the duke of Bourbon, who was proud and haughty, and never converſed with the knights and ſquires from foreign countries in the ſame agreeable manner the lord de Coucy did.

The duke was accuſtomed to ſit croſs-legged the greater part of the day before his pavilion; and thoſe who had any thing to ſay to him were obliged

obliged to make many reverences, and addreſs him, through the means of a third perſon. He was indifferent whether the poorer knights and ſquires were well or ill at their eaſe: this the lord de Coucy always inquired into, and by it gained great popularity. It was told me, by ſome foreign knights who had been there, that had the lord de Coucy been commander in chief, inſtead of the duke of Bourbon, the ſucceſs would have been very different; for many attacks on the town of Africa were fruſtrated by the pride and fault of the duke of Bourbon: ſeveral thought it would have been taken, if it had not been for him.

This ſiege laſted, by an exact account, ſixty-one days; during which, many were the ſkirmiſhes before the town and at the barriers: they were well defended, for the flower of the infidel chivalry was in the town. The Chriſtians ſaid among themſelves,—'If we could gain this place by ſtorm or otherwiſe, and ſtrongly reinforce and victual it during the winter, a large body of our countrymen might then come hither in the ſpring and gain a footing in the kingdoms of Barbary and Tunis, which would encourage the Chriſtians to croſs the ſea annually and extend their conqueſts.' 'Would to God it were ſo,' others replied; 'for the knights now here would then be comfortably lodged, and every day, if they pleaſed, they might have deeds of arms.' The beſieged were alarmed at the obſtinacy of their attacks, and redoubled their guards. The great heat, however, did more for them than all the reſt, added to the conſtant un-

certainty of being attacked; for the policy of the Saracens was to keep them in continual alarms. They were almoſt burnt up when in armour; and it was wonderful that any eſcaped death; for, during the month of Auguſt, the air was ſuffocating.

An extraordinary accident happened, which if it had laſted any time, muſt have deſtroyed them all. During one week, from the heat and corruption of the air, there were ſuch wonderful ſwarms of flies, the army was covered with them. The men knew not how to rid themſelves of theſe troubleſome gueſts, which multiplied daily, to their great aſtoniſhment; but, through the grace of GOD and the Virgin Mary, to whom they were devoted, a remedy was found, in a thunder and hail ſtorm, that fell with great violence, and deſtroyed all the flies. The air, by this ſtorm, was much cooled, and the army got to be in better health than it had been for ſome time.

Knights who are on ſuch expeditions muſt cheerfully put up with what weather may happen, for they cannot have it according to their wiſhes; and, when any one falls ſick, he muſt be nurſed to his recovery or to his death. Although the knights from France had undertaken this voyage with an eagerneſs and reſolution that bore them up under the pains they ſuffered, they had not many luxuries to gratify them; for nothing was ſent them from France, nor had any in that kingdom more intelligence from them than if they were buried under ground. Once, indeed, there came a galley from Barcelona, laden more with oranges and

and ſmall grains than with any thing elſe. The oranges were of the greateſt ſervice, by the refreſhment they afforded; but, whatever veſſel came to them, none returned, for fear of meeting the Saracens at ſea, and becauſe they wiſhed to wait the event of the ſiege, and ſee whether the Chriſtians would conquer the town.

The young king Lewis of Sicily exerted himſelf, in order that his ſubjects ſhould carry a conſtant ſupply of proviſion to them, for he was their neareſt neighbour. It was fortunate the Saracens were not ſtrong enough at ſea to prevent the veſſels coming from the ports of Sicily and Naples, or they would have conquered them without ſtriking a blow. They therefore contented themſelves with keeping the Chriſtians under perpetual alarms on land.

The Saracens have not a large navy like the Genoeſe and Venetians; and what they get at ſea is by thievery; and they never dare wait the attack of the Chriſtians unleſs they be in very ſuperior numbers, for a well-armed galley with Chriſtians will defeat four of ſuch enemies. In truth, the Turks are better men at arms by ſea and land than any other nation of unbelievers of our faith; but they were at too great a diſtance from Africa, and the town could not receive any aid from them. The Turks had heard that the town of Africa was beſieged by the Chriſtians, and had often, but in vain, wiſhed to have been there.

CHAP. XX.

A CHALLENGE IS SENT BY THE SARACENS TO OFFER COMBAT OF TEN AGAINST TEN CHRISTIANS.—THE SARACENS FAIL IN THEIR ENGAGEMENT.—THE TOWN OF AFRICA IS STORMED, BUT UNSUCCESSFULLY, AND WITH THE LOSS OF MANY WORTHY MEN.

THE beſiegers and their enemies ſtudied day and night how they could moſt effectually annoy each other. Agadinquor Oliferne, Madifer de Tunis, Belins Maldages and Brahadin de Bugia, and ſome other Saracens, conſulted together, and ſaid; 'Here are our enemies the Chriſtians encamped before us, and we cannot defeat them. They are ſo few in number when compared to us, that they muſt be well adviſed by their able captains; for, in all our ſkirmiſhes, we have never been able to make one knight priſoner. If we could capture one or two of their leaders, we ſhould acquire fame, and learn from them the ſtate of their army and what are their intentions. Let us now conſider how we may accompliſh this.' Agadinquor replied, 'Though I am the youngeſt, I wiſh to ſpeak firſt.' 'We agree to it,' ſaid the others. 'By my faith,' continued he, 'I am very deſirous of engaging them; and I think, if I were matched in equal combat with one of my ſize, I ſhould conquer him. If you will therefore ſelect ten valiant men, I will challenge the Chriſtians

tians to ſend the ſame number to fight with us. We have juſtice on our ſide in this war, for they have quarrelled with us without reaſon; and this right and the courage I feel induce me to believe that we ſhall have the victory.'

Madifer de Tunis, who was a very valiant man, ſaid,—' Agadinquor, what you have propoſed is much to your honour. To-morrow, if you pleaſe, you ſhall ride as our chief towards the camp of the Chriſtians, taking an interpreter with you, and make a ſignal that you have ſomething to ſay. If you be well received by them, propoſe your combat of ten againſt ten. We ſhall then hear what anſwer they give; and, though I believe the offer will be accepted, we muſt take good counſel how we proceed againſt theſe Chriſtians, whom we conſider as more valiant than ourſelves.'

This being determined on, they retired to reſt. On the morrow, as uſual, they advanced to ſkirmiſh; but Agadinquor rode on at ſome diſtance in front with his interpreter. The day was bright and clear, and a little after ſun-riſe the Saracens were ready for battle. Sir Guy and ſir William de la Trimouille had commanded the guard of the night, and were on the point of retiring when the Saracens appeared in ſight about three bow-ſhots diſtant. Agadinquor and his interpreter advanced towards one of the wings, and made ſigns to give notice that he wanted to parley with ſome one: by accident, he came near the pennon of a good ſquire at arms called Affrenal, who, noticing his ſigns, rode forward a pace, and told his men to

remain as they were, 'for that he would go and ſee what the Saracen wanted: he has an interpreter with him, and is probably come to make ſome propoſition.' His men remained ſteady, and he rode towards the Saracen.

When they were near each other, the interpreter ſaid,—'Chriſtian, are you a gentleman, of name in arms, and ready to anſwer what ſhall be aſked of you?' 'Yes,' replied Affrenal, 'I am: ſpeak what you pleaſe, it ſhall be anſwered.'

'Well,' ſaid the interpreter, 'here is a noble man of our country who demands to combat with you bodily; and, if you would like to increaſe the number to ten, he will bring as many of his friends to meet you. The cauſe for the challenge is this: They maintain, that their faith is more perfect than yours; for it has continued ſince the beginning of the world, when it was written down; and that your faith has been introduced by a mortal, whom the Jews hung and crucified.' 'Ho,' interrupted Affrenal, 'be ſilent on theſe matters, for it does not become ſuch as thee to diſpute concerning them, but tell the Saracen, who has ordered thee to ſpeak, to ſwear on his faith that ſuch a combat ſhall take place, and he ſhall be gratified within four hours. Let him bring ten gentlemen, and of name in arms, on his ſide, and I will bring as many to meet him.'

The interpreter related to the Saracen the words that had paſſed, who ſeemed much rejoiced thereat, and pledged himſelf for the combat.

This

This being done, each returned to his friends; but the news had already been carried to ſir Guy and to ſir William de la Trimouille, who, meeting Affrenal, demanded how he had ſettled matters with the Saracen. Affrenal related what you have heard, and that he had accepted the challenge. The two knights were well pleaſed, and ſaid,—'Affrenal, go and ſpeak to others, for we will be of your number ten.' He replied, 'God aſſiſt us! I fancy I ſhall find plenty ready to fight the Saracens.' Shortly after, Affrenal met the lord de Thim, to whom he told what had paſſed, and aſked if he would make one. The lord de Thim willingly accepted the offer; and of all thoſe to whom Affrenal related it, he might, if he pleaſed, have had a hundred inſtead of ten. Sir Boucicaut, the younger, accepted it with great courage, as did ſir Helion de Lignac, ſir John Ruſſel, an Engliſhman, ſir John Harpedone, Alain Boudet and Bouchet. When the number of ten was completed, they retired to their lodgings, to prepare and arm themſelves.

When the news of this combat was ſpread through the army, and the names of the ten were told, the knights and ſquires ſaid,—'They are lucky fellows, thus to have ſuch a gallant feat of arms fall to their lot.' 'Would to Heaven,' added many, 'that we were of the ten.' All the knights and ſquires ſeemed to rejoice at this event, except the lord de Coucy. I believe the lord de Thim was a dependant on, or of the company of the lord de Coucy; for, when he repaired to his

tent to arm, he found him there, and acknowledged him for his lord. He related to him the challenge of the Saracen, and that he had accepted being one of the ten. All preſent were loud in praiſe of it, except the lord de Coucy, who ſaid, 'Hold your tongues, you youngſters, who as yet know nothing of the world, and who never conſider conſequences, but always applaud folly in preference to good. I ſee no advantage in this combat, for many reaſons: one is, that ten noble and diſtinguiſhed gentlemen are about to fight with ten Saracens. How do we know if their opponents are gentlemen? They may, if they chooſe, bring to the combat, ten varlets, or knaves, and, if they are defeated, what is the gain? We ſhall not the ſooner win the town of Africa, but by it riſk very valuable lives. Perhaps they may form an ambuſcade, and, while our friends are on the plain waiting for their opponents, ſurround them and carry them off, by which we ſhall be greatly weakened. I therefore ſay, that Affrenal has not wiſely managed this matter; and, when he firſt met the Saracen, he ſhould have otherwiſe anſwered, and ſaid, 'I am not the commander in chief of our army, but one of the leaſt in it; and you, Saracen, who addreſs yourſelf to me and blame our faith, are not qualified to diſcuſs ſuch matters, nor have you well addreſſed yourſelf. I will conduct you to my lords, and aſſure you, on my life, that no harm befal you in going or in returning, for my lords will cheerfully liſten to you.' He ſhould then have led him to the duke of Bourbon and the

council

council of war, when his propoſal would have been heard and diſcuſſed at leiſure, his intentions been known, and anſwers made according as they ſhould think the matter deſerved. Such a combat ſhould never be undertaken but after great deliberation, eſpecially with enemies like to thoſe we are engaged with. And when it had been agreed on, that the names and qualities of each combatant ſhould be declared, we would then have ſelected proper perſons to meet them, and proper ſecurities would have been required from the Saracens for the uninterrupted performance of the combat, and a due obſervance of the articles. If matters had been thus managed, lord of Thim, I think it would have been better. It would be well if it could be put on this footing; and I will ſpeak to the duke of Bourbon and the principal barons in the army, and hear what they ſhall ſay on the ſubject.

The lord de Coucy then departed for the tent of the duke of Bourbon, where the barons were aſſembled, as they had heard of this challenge, to conſider what might be the probable event of it. Although the lord de Coucy had intended his ſpeech to the lord de Thim as advice for his benefit, he did not the leſs arm himſelf: when fully equipped, he went with his companions, who were completely armed, and in good array, with ſir Guy de la Trimouille at their head, to meet the Saracens.

During this, there was converſation on the ſubject between the lords in the tent of the duke of Bourbon: many thought the accepting ſuch a challenge

a challenge improper, and ſupported the opinion of the lord de Coucy, who ſaid it ought to have been ordered otherwiſe. But ſome, and in particular the lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu, and the lord Philip de Bar, ſaid, 'Since the challenge has been accepted by our knights, they would be diſgraced were the combat now broken off: and in the name of God and our lady, let them accompliſh it the beſt manner they can.' This was adopted; for it was now too far advanced to be ſtopped. It was therefore ordered to draw out the whole army properly arrayed, that if the Saracens had formed any bad deſigns, they might be prepared to meet them.

Every one, therefore, made himſelf ready: the whole was drawn up, as if for inſtant combat; the Genoeſe croſs-bows on one ſide, and the knights and ſquires on the other; each lord under his own banner or pennon emblazoned with his arms. It was a fine ſight to view the army thus diſplayed, and they ſhewed great eagerneſs to attack the Saracens.

The ten knights and ſquires were advanced on the plain waiting for their opponents, but they came not, nor ſhewed any appearance of ſo doing; for, when they ſaw the Chriſtian army ſo handſomely drawn out in battle arrāy, they were afraid to advance though they were thrice their numbers. At times they ſent horſemen, well mounted, to ride near their army, obſerve its diſpoſition, and then gallop back, which was ſolely done through malice, to annoy the Chriſtians.

This

This was the hotteſt day they felt, and it was ſo extremely oppreſſive that the moſt active among them were almoſt ſtifled in their armour: they had never ſuffered ſo much before, and yet they remained expecting the ten Saracens, but in vain, for they never heard a word from them. The army was ordered to attack the town of Africa, ſince they were prepared, and thus paſs the day; and the ten champions, in regard to their honour, were to remain on their ground to the evening.

The knights and ſquires advanced with great alacrity to the attack of the town, but they were ſorely oppreſſed with the heat; and had the Saracens known their ſituation, they might have done them much damage, probably they might even have raiſed the ſiege and obtained a complete victory, for the Chriſtians were exceedingly weakened and worn down. True it is, they gained by ſtorm the wall of the firſt incloſure; but no one inhabited that part, and the enemy retired within their ſecond line of defence, ſkirmiſhing as they retreated, and without any great loſs.

The Chriſtians paid dear for an inconſiderable advantage: the heat of the ſun and its reflection on the ſands, added to the fatigue of fighting, which laſted until evening, cauſed the deaths of ſeveral valiant knights and ſquires: the more the pity.

I will mention the names of thoſe who this day fell victims to the heat and unhealthineſs of the climate. Firſt, ſir William de Gacille, ſir Guiſcard de la Garde, ſir Lyon Scalet, ſir Guy de la Salveſte, ſir William d'Eſtapelle, ſir William de Guiret,

ſir

ſir Raffroy de la Chapelle, the lord de Pierre Buffiere, the lord de Bonnet, ſir Robert de Hanges, ſir Stephen de Sancerre, ſir Aubert de la Motte, ſir Alain de la Champaigne, ſir Geoffry Sreſſiers, ſir Raoul d'Econflan, the lord de Bourg from Artois, ſir John de Crie, baſtard de la Mourleraye, ſir Triſtan his brother, ſir Arné de Conſay, ſir Arné de Donnay, ſir John de Compaignie, ſir Fouke d'Eſcauffours, ſir John de Dignant, ſir John de Cathenais.

I will now add the names of ſquires who fell: Fouchans de Liege, John des Iſles, Blondelet d'Arenton, John de la Motte, Blomberis, Floridas de Rocque, the lord de Bellefreres, William Fondrigay, Walter de Canfours, John Morillon, Peter de Maulves, Guillot Vilain, John de la Lande, John Purier, John le Moine, John de Launay and William du Parc.

Now conſider how great was this loſs; and, had the advice of the gallant lord de Coucy been followed, it would not have happened, for the army would have remained quietly in its camp, as it had hitherto done. The whole army were diſmayed at it, and each bewailed the loſs of his friend. They retired late to their camp, and kept a ſtronger guard than uſual, during the night, for fear of the Saracens. It paſſed, however, without further accident, and more prudent arrangements were made. The Saracens were ignorant of what their enemies had ſuffered: had they known it, they would have had a great advantage over them, but they were in dread of the Chriſtians, and never ventured

ventured to attack them but in ſkirmiſhes, retreating, after one or two charges. The perſon among them who had ſhewn the moſt courage was Agadinquor d'Oliferne. He was enamoured with the daughter of the king of Tunis, and, in compliment to her, was eager to perform brilliant actions.

Thus was the ſiege of Africa continued; but the relations and friends of the knights and ſquires who had gone thither, from France and other countries, received no intelligence, nor knew more of them than if they were dead. They were ſo much alarmed at not having any news of them, that many proceſſions were made in England, France and Hainault, to the churches to pray God that he would bring them back, in ſafety, to their ſeveral homes.

The intention of the Chriſtians was to remain before the town of Africa, until they ſhould have conquered it by ſtorm, treaty or famine. The king of Sicily, as well as the inhabitants of the adjacent iſlands, were anxious it ſhould be ſo, for the Africans had done them frequent damage; but the Genoeſe were particularly kind, in ſupplying the knights and ſquires with every thing they wanted, to prevent them from being tired with the length of the campaign.

To ſay the truth, this was a very great enterpriſe, and the knights and ſquires ſhewed much courage and perſeverance in continuing the ſiege in ſo unhealthy a climate, after the great loſſes they had ſuffered, without aſſiſtance from any one; and

and even when the Genoeſe, who had firſt propoſed the expedition, were diſſembling with them, and as it was ſaid, were in treaty with the Saracens, to leave the Chriſtian army unſupported and neglected, as I ſhall relate in due time, according to the reports that were made to me.

We will now leave the affairs of Africa, and ſpeak of the handſome feaſts that were at this time given at London.

CHAP. XXI.

A GRAND TOURNAMENT IS HOLDEN AT LONDON.—THE KING OF ENGLAND GIVES SPLENDID ENTERTAINMENTS DURING THE SIEGE OF THE TOWN OF AFRICA BY THE CHRISTIANS.—THE COUNT D'OSTREVANT RECEIVES THE ORDER OF THE GARTER, WHICH DISPLEASES THE KING OF FRANCE.

NEWS of the ſplendid feaſts and entertainments made for queen Iſabella's public entry into Paris was carried to many countries, and very juſtly, for they were moſt honourably conducted. The king of England and his three uncles had received the fulleſt information of them; for ſome of his knights had been preſent, who had reported all that had paſſed with the utmoſt fidelity. In imitation of this, the king of England ordered grand tournaments

tournaments and feaſts to be holden in the city of London, where ſixty knights ſhould be accompanied by ſixty noble ladies, richly ornamented and dreſſed. The ſixty knights were to tilt for two days; that is to ſay, on the Sunday after Michaelmas-day, and the Monday following, in the year of grace 1390.

The ſixty knights were to ſet out at two o'clock in the afternoon from the Tower of London, with their ladies, and parade through the ſtreets, down Cheapſide, to a large ſquare called Smithfield. There the knights were to wait on the Sunday the arrival of any foreign knights who might be deſirous of tilting; and this feaſt of the Sunday was called the challengers. The ſame ceremonies were to take place on the Monday, and the ſixty knights to be prepared for tilting courteouſly with blunted lances againſt all comers. The prize for the beſt knight of the opponents was to be a rich crown of gold, that for the tenants of the liſts a very rich golden claſp: they were to be given to the moſt gallant tilter, according to the judgment of the ladies, who would be preſent with the queen of England and the great barons, as ſpectators.

On the Tueſday, the tournaments were to be continued by ſquires, againſt others of the ſame rank who wiſhed to oppoſe them. The prize for the opponents was a courſer ſaddled and bridled, and for the tenants of the liſts a falcon. The manner of holding this feaſt being ſettled, heralds were ſent to proclaim it throughout England, Scotland,

Scotland, Hainault, Germany, Flanders, and France. It was ordered by the council to what parts each herald was to go; and, having time before hand, they publiſhed it in moſt countries.

Many knights and ſquires from foreign lands made preparations to attend it: ſome to ſee the manners of the Engliſh, others to take part in the tournaments. On the feaſt being made known in Hainault, ſir William de Hainault count d'Oſtrevant, who was at that time young and gallant, and fond of tilting, determined, in his own mind, to be preſent, and to honour and make acquaintance with his couſin, king Richard, and his uncles, whom he had never ſeen. He therefore engaged many knights and ſquires to accompany him; in particular the lord de Gomegines, becauſe he was well known in England, having lived there ſome time. Sir William reſolved, while his preparations were making, to viſit his father, the count of Hainault, Holland, and Zealand, to ſpeak with him on the ſubject, and to take leave of him before he went to England. He therefore ſet out from Queſnoy, in Hainault, and continued his journey to the Hague, a good town in Holland, where his father then reſided.

During the viſit, he told his father his intentions to partake of the great feaſt in England, to ſee his couſins and other Engliſh lords whom he was deſirous of knowing. 'William,' replied the count, 'my good ſon, you have nothing to do in England: you are now connected by marriage with the blood-royal of France, and your ſiſter is

the

the wife of the eldeſt ſon of our couſin the duke of Burgundy: you have no occaſion, therefore, to ſeek other connections.' 'My lord,' anſwered ſir William, 'I do not wiſh to go to England to form any alliance, but merely to tilt and enjoy this feaſt, which has been publicly proclaimed every where, and viſit my couſins whom I have never ſeen. Should I not go thither, after the particular invitation I have had, for a purpoſe meſſenger brought it me, my refuſal will be conſidered as the effect of pride and preſumption. I feel myſelf bound therefore in honour to go, and I beg, father, that you will not refuſe me your conſent.' 'William,' replied the count, 'you are your own maſter; act as you pleaſe; but I ſhould think, for the ſake of peace, it were better you did not go.'

The count d'Oſtrevant, perceiving this ſubject was diſagreeable to his father, turned the converſation to other matters; but his reſolution was fixed, and his purveyances were continued to be made and forwarded to Calais. His herald, Gomegines, was ſent to England to inform the king and his uncles, that he would come honourably attended to his feaſt. They were much pleaſed at this intelligence, and preſented the herald with great gifts, which were very acceptable, for he became blind towards the end of his days. I know not if he had angered God that he was afflicted with ſuch a puniſhment; but this herald, when in power, had behaved with ſo much inſolence, that he was little pitied in his diſtreſs.

The count d'Oſtrevant took leave of his father, and, on his departure from the Hague, returned to his lady at Queſnoy. Many noble knights were buſy in preparations for this feaſt that had been ſo pompouſly proclaimed.

The count Waleran de Saint Pol, who had married the half ſiſter to king Richard, aſſembled a handſome body of knights and ſquires, and with them made for Calais, where paſſage-veſſels were waiting to convey to Dover the lords and knights going to this tournament. From Dover, they continued their journey to London, where their ſervants had previouſly ſecured their lodgings.

The count d'Oſtrevant ſet out from Hainault with a numerous attendance of knights and ſquires, and travelled through Artois to Calais, where he met the count de St. Pol. When the wind was favourable, and their attendants embarked, they croſſed the channel; but it was told me, and I believe it, that the count de St. Pol arrived firſt at London, where he found the king and his brother-in-law, ſir John Holland, who, with many other nobles, made him a hearty welcome, and inquired the news in France.

The count d'Oſtrevant, having croſſed the ſea, ſtopped at Canterbury, and on the Friday morning, without breaking his faſt, paid his devotions at the ſhrine of Thomas à Becket, making at the ſame time a very rich offering at that altar.

He remained that whole day at Canterbury, and on the following went to Rocheſter. On account of his numerous train, he travelled but a ſhort

day's

day's journey, to ſpare his horſes that carried the baggage. After maſs, he left Rocheſter, and dined at Dartford, whence he continued his journey to London, for it was on this Sunday the tournaments were to begin.

This Sunday, according to proclamation, being the next to Michaelmas day, was the beginning of the tiltings, and called the feaſt of the challengers. About three o'clock, there paraded out from the Tower of London, which is ſituated in the ſquare of St. Catherine, on the banks of the Thames, ſixty barded courſers ornamented for the tournament, on each was mounted a ſquire of honour that advanced only at a foot's pace; then came ſixty ladies of rank mounted on palfreys moſt elegantly and richly dreſſed, following each other, every one leading a knight with a ſilver chain completely armed for tilting; and in this proceſſion they moved on through the ſtreets of London, attended by numbers of minſtrels and trumpets, to Smithfield. The queen of England and her ladies and damſels were already arrived and placed in chambers handſomely decorated.

The king was with the queen. When the ladies who led the knights arrived in the ſquare, their ſervants were ready to aſſiſt them to diſmount from their palfreys, and to conduct them to the apartments prepared for them.

The knights remained until their ſquires of honour had diſmounted and brought them their courſers, which having mounted, they had their

helmets laced on, and prepared themſelves in all points for the tilt.

The count de Saint Pol with his companions now advanced, handſomely armed for the occaſion, and the tournament began. Every foreign knight who pleaſed tilted, or had time for ſo doing, before the evening ſet in. The tiltings were well and long continued, until night forced them to break off. The lords and ladies then retired where they had made appointments. The queen was lodged in the biſhop of London's palace near St. Paul's church, where the banquet was held.

Towards evening, the count d'Oſtrevant arrived, and was kindly received by king Richard and his lords. The prize for the opponents was adjudged to the count de St. Pol, as the beſt knight at this tournament, and that for the tenants to the earl of Huntingdon.

The dancings were at the queen's reſidence, in the preſence of the king, his uncles and the barons of England. The ladies and damſels continued their amuſements, before and after ſupper, until it was time to retire, when all went to their lodgings, except ſuch as were attached to the king or queen, who, during the tournament, lived at the palace of the biſhop of London.

You would have ſeen on the enſuing morning, Monday, ſquires and varlets buſily employed, in different parts of London, furbiſhing and making ready armour and horſes for their maſters who were

were to engage in the juſts. In the afternoon, king Richard entered Smithfield magnificently accompanied by dukes, lords and knights, for he was chief of the tenants of the liſts. The queen took her ſtation as on the preceding day, with her ladies, in the apartments that had been prepared for her. The count d'Oſtrevant came next, with a large company of knights and ſquires fully armed for tilting; then the count de Saint Pol and the knights from France.

The tournament now began, and every one exerted himſelf to the utmoſt to excel: many were unhorſed, and more loſt their helmets. The juſting continued with great courage and perſeverance until night put an end to it. The company now retired to their lodgings or their homes; and, when the hour for ſupper was near, the lords and ladies attended it, which was ſplendid and well ſerved. The prize for the opponents at the tournament was adjudged by the ladies, lords and heralds, to the count d'Oſtrevant, who far eclipſed all who had tilted that day: that for the tenants was given to a gallant knight of England called ſir Hugh Spenſer.

On the morrow, Tueſday, the tournament was renewed by the ſquires, who tilted in the preſence of the king, queen and all the nobles, until night, when all retired as on the preceding day. The ſupper was as magnificent as before at the palace of the biſhop, where the king and queen lodged; and the dancing laſted until day-break, when the company broke up.

The tournament was continued on the Wedneſday by all knights and ſquires indiſcriminately, who were inclined to juſt: it laſted until night, and the ſupper and dances were as the preceding day.

On Thurſday, the king entertained at ſupper all the foreign knights and ſquires, and the queen their ladies and damſels. The duke of Lancaſter gave a grand dinner to them on the Friday. On Saturday, the king and his court left London for Windſor, whither the count d'Oſtrevant, the count de Saint Pol, and the foreign knights who had been preſent at the feaſts, were invited. All accepted the invitation, as was right, and went to Windſor, which has a handſome caſtle, well built and richly ornamented, ſituated on the Thames, twenty miles from London.

The entertainments were very magnificent in the dinners and ſuppers king Richard made, for he thought he could not pay honour enough to his couſin the count d'Oſtrevant. He was ſolicited by the king and his uncles to be one of the companions of the order of the blue Garter, as the chapel of St. George, the patron, was at Windſor. In anſwer to their requeſt, he ſaid he would conſider of it, and inſtantly conſulted the lord de Gomegines and the baſtard Fierabras de Vertain, who were far from diſcouraging him from accepting the order. He returned to the king, and was admitted a knight-companion of the Garter, to the great ſurpriſe of the French knights then preſent. They murmured together, and ſaid,—"This count d'Oſtrevant

d'Oſtrevant plainly ſhews that his heart is more inclined to England than France, when he thus accepts the order of the Garter, which is the device of the kings of England. He is purchaſing the ill will of the court of France and of my lord of Burgundy, whoſe daughter he has married, and a time may come for him to repent of it. However, to ſay the truth, he muſt know what concerns him beſt: but he was well beloved by the king of France, his brother the duke of Touraine and all the royal family; ſo that, when he came to them at Paris or elſewhere, they ſhewed him more kindneſs than to any other of their couſins.'

Thus was the count d'Oſtrevant blamed by the French without the ſmalleſt cauſe; for what he had done was no way to injure the crown of France, nor his couſins and friends of that country. Nothing was farther from his mind than any hoſtility to the king of France; but he had accepted the Garter to oblige his couſins in England, and on occaſion to be a mediator between the two countries. When he took the oaths uſual on the admiſſion of knights to the order, it ought to be known publicly that nothing was ſaid or done prejudicial to France, nor any treaties entered into with that intent. I mention this, ſince it is impoſſible to prevent the envious from ſpreading abroad their tales.

When the entertainments at Windſor had laſted a ſufficient time, and the king had made handſome preſents to the knights and ſquires of France, particularly to the young count d'Oſtre-

vant, the company took leave of the king, the queen, and the court, and departed for their different homes.

Rumour, which magnifies every thing, carried to the king of France, his brother and uncles, every particular that had paſſed at this feaſt in England. Thoſe who had been there confirmed it, nothing was forgotten, but rather additions made, with the intent of doing miſchief in preference to good. They related, that William of Hainault, who called himſelf count d'Oſtrevant, had taken great pains to honour this feaſt; that he had had the prize given him at the tournament in preference to many other foreign knights, and that he was loud in the praiſe of the Engliſh, and was become the liege man to the king of England by taking the oaths, and accepting the order of the blue Garter in the chapel of Saint George at Windſor; which order had been eſtabliſhed by king Edward and his ſon, the prince of Wales; that no one could be admitted a knight companion of that order, without making oath never to bear arms againſt the crown of England, and this oath the count d'Oſtrevant had taken without the ſmalleſt reſervation.

The king of France and his uncles, on hearing this, were much troubled and vexed with the count d'Oſtrevant. The king ſaid,—'Only think, it is not a year ago ſince the count begged of me that his brother might be biſhop of Cambray; but, after what we have heard, that would now be much to our prejudice. It will be better that our couſin

of

St. Pol have Cambray than John of Hainault.—The Hainaulters were never our ſincere friends, nor ever will be, for they are too proud and preſumptuous, and have always been more attached to England than France, but a time may come when they ſhall dearly pay for it. We will,' added the king, 'that the count d'Oſtrevant be ſummoned to appear before us, and do homage for the county of Oſtrevant, or we will diſpoſſeſs him and attach it to our crown.'

Such of the council as were preſent, replied,—'Sire, you ſay well, and what you order ought to be done.' The duke of Burgundy, whoſe daughter the count had married, was highly diſpleaſed at theſe reports; for he had always puſhed his ſon-in-law as much as he could into the good graces of the king and the royal family. This buſineſs was not neglected; for the king of France wrote very ſharp letters to the count d'Oſtrevant, which he ſent to him at Queſnoy, commanding him to come to Paris, and, in the preſence of the peers of France, do homage for the county of Oſtrevant, or he would make war upon him, and diſpoſſeſs him of it.

The count d'Oſtrevant, on peruſing theſe letters, found that the king and his council were much angered, and inſtantly aſſembled his moſt confidential counſellors to conſider of the anſwer. He called to his aid the lord de Fontaines, the lord de Gomegines, ſir William de Heremies, the lord de Traſſegnies, the bailiff of Hainault, the lord de Sancelles, ſir Race de Montigny, the abbot de

de Creſpin, John Semart, and James Barrier of Valenciennes. Theſe counſellors having ſome time debated, and turned the matter over various ways, thought it moſt adviſable to write to the king of France, and anſwer generally to what he had urged, and demand an opportunity for ſo doing more particularly, by perſons that were properly qualified, and not by letters. In the mean time, they recommended ſending a well-informed meſſenger to duke Albert in Holland, to acquaint him with what was paſſing, and have his advice.

This was done: they wrote ſuch humble and diſcreet letters to the king of France and his council, as greatly pacified them; and ſent the lord de Traſſegnies, the lord de Sancelles, John Semart and James Barrier to Holland. On being admitted to the count of Holland, they laid before him the ſituation of Hainault, and the letters that had been received from the king of France.

If the count of Holland was not ſurpriſed at what had happened, it is not to be wondered at; for he replied,—'I was juſt thinking that what you tell me would come to paſs: my ſon William had no buſineſs to go to England. I have given up to him the government of Hainault: let him adviſe with the wiſeſt and moſt prudent in that country. Make intereſt with our fair couſin, the duke of Burgundy; for he has the power to ſet to rights all this buſineſs. I cannot give you better advice, nor recommend a more fit perſon to addreſs yourſelves to.'

On

On this, the envoys returned to Hainault, and related all that had paſſed, which gave ſatisfaction. The lord de Traſſegnies, ſir William de Heremies, ſir Race de Montigny, John Semart and James Barrier, were ordered to wait on the king of France and the duke of Burgundy. The detail of all that paſſed would be too long for ſuch a hiſtory as this, that embraces ſo many objects. The concluſion was, that notwithſtanding the ſupport of the duke of Burgundy, the count d'Oſtrevant was forced to go to Paris to perform his duty, and acknowledge his holding the county of Oſtrevant from the crown of France, otherwiſe he would have had war inſtantly carried into Hainault. The lord de Coucy and ſir Oliver de Cliſſon took much pains that a war ſhould enſue; but the lord de la Riviere and ſir John le Mercier counteracted them to the utmoſt of their power. As we have dwelt too long on theſe matters, we will return to the barons and knights of France, who were beſieging the ſtrong town of Africa againſt the Saracens.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

THE SIEGE OF AFRICA IS RAISED.—THE CAUSE OF IT.—THE KNIGHTS AND SQUIRES RETURN TO THEIR OWN COUNTRIES.

YOU have before heard, what pains the Chriſtians took to conquer the town of Africa; for they thought, if they ſucceeded, they ſhould gain great renown, and be able to withſtand, during the winter, all the forces the infidels could bring againſt them, until they ſhould be reinforced from Europe, eſpecially by the king of France, who was young and fond of arms, and there were ſtill two years to run of the truce with England: the Chriſtians had therefore laid ſiege to Africa, as being the moſt convenient entrance into Barbary. The infidels, ſuſpicious of ſuch being their intentions, well victualled the place, and reinforced it with a new garriſon, the better to guard it.

The ſiege ſtill continued, although, after the before-mentioned loſs on the part of the Chriſtians, little advantage was gained, and the men at arms were greatly diſcouraged; for they could not obtain any opportunity of changing the tireſomeneſs of their ſituation, and of revenging themſelves on the enemy. Many, in conſequence, began to murmur and ſay,—'We remain here in vain; for if we do nothing more effectual than ſkirmiſhing,

miſhing, we ſhall never gain the town: if, by accident, we kill one infidel by our arrows, they ſupply his place with ten more, as they are in their own country, and have proviſion and ſtores in abundance, while ours are brought with much difficulty and uncertainty. What will become of us, if we ſtay longer? The cold nights of winter will freeze and benumb us to death. We ſhall be in a moſt diſagreeable ſtate for many reaſons: firſt, at that time of the year the ſea will be ſo tempeſtuous no one will venture on it. We have now but eight days proviſion, and ſhould the ſtormy weather ſet in, and prevent any veſſels arriving, we muſt inevitably periſh. Secondly, ſuppoſe we have proviſion and ſtores in plenty, how can the army ſupport, for ſo long a time, the fatigue of a regular guard? The danger will be too great; for the enemy is on his own ground, and well acquainted with the country, and may attack us in the night-ſeaſon, as we have already ſeen, and do us infinite damage. Thirdly, ſhould we be infected with any diſorder, from want of better air and freſh proviſion, it may be contagious, and we ſhall drop off one after another, for we have not any remedies to guard againſt ſuch a misfortune. Beſides, ſhould the Genoeſe, who are a treacherous race, wiſh to return without us, they might embark in the night time, and, when once on board their veſſels, we could not prevent them, and they would leave us here to pay the reckoning. It will be right that we remonſtrate with our lords, who are enjoying their eaſe, on

theſe

theſe our ſuſpicions; for the Genoeſe do not conceal their opinions of us. Some of their talkers have ſaid to our men,—'You Frenchmen are odd men at arms: when we ſailed from Genoa, we thought you would have conquered this town of Africa within a week or fortnight after your landing; but we have been here nearly two months, and nothing has been done: by the aſſaults and ſkirmiſhes you make, the town need not fear you theſe two years; and at the rate you go on, you will never conquer the kingdoms of Tunis or Africa.'

The Genoeſe had ſo frequently held this language to the varlets and others of the army, that it reached the ears of their lords, and was repeated to the lord de Coucy, who was wiſe and prudent, and to whom the whole army looked up. He conſidered a while, and then ſaid to himſelf,—'The converſations of theſe Genoeſe are but too well founded in truth: to put a ſtop to them, a full aſſembly of the principal knights muſt be held, to conſider how we are to proceed, for winter is faſt approaching.' At this council, which was held in the duke of Bourbon's tent, various plans were propoſed; but the concluſion was, that they would, for this ſeaſon, break up the ſiege, and every perſon ſhould return home the way he had come. The chief lords ſecretly made preparations accordingly, and, calling to them the maſters of the galleys and other veſſels, acquainted them with their intentions. The captuins were much ſurpriſed, and ſaid,—'My lords,

do

do not harbour any ſuſpicions of us, for we are pledged to you by our honour and oaths, and we will moſt loyally and honeſtly acquit ourſelves. Had we pleaſed, we might have accepted the favourable offers that were made us by the Africans, but we refuſed to enter into any treaty with them, from our attachment and engagements to you.'

'We have no doubts of you, gentlemen,' replied the lord de Coucy, 'for we look on you as loyal and valiant men: but we have conſidered our ſituation; winter is at hand, and we have a ſcarcity of proviſion. Should it be God's good pleaſure that we return to France, we will inform the king, who is young and fond of war, of the ſtate of this country. At this moment, he knows not where to employ his force, for he and the king of England are at peace. He is unhappy when idle, and we ſhall adviſe him to undertake an expedition hither, as well to have the pleaſure of meeting the king of Sicily as to conquer this country from the Saracens. Prepare and make ready your galleys, for we ſhall leave this coaſt in a very few days.'

The Genoeſe were not well pleaſed with the French lords for thus breaking up the ſiege of the town of Africa; but, as they could not amend it, they were forced to bear with it as well as they could.

There was a rumour current in the Chriſtian camp, that the Genoeſe were treating with the Saracens to betray and deliver up to them the remainder of the army. It was firmly believed by many, and they ſaid; 'Our principal commanders,

manders, the duke of Bourbon, the dauphin of Auvergne, the lord de Coucy, ſir Guy de la Trimouille, ſir Philip de Bar and ſir John de Vienne, are well acquainted with this plot; and for this reaſon they have determined ſuddenly to break up the ſiege.'

When it was proclaimed that every one was to embark on board the galleys or other veſſels, in an orderly manner, you would have ſeen the varlets in the greateſt buſtle packing up the purveyances of their different lords, and conveying them on board the ſhips which lay at anchor off the ſhore. When all things were embarked, the knights entered the galleys that had brought them thither: many had bargained with the captains to carry them to Naples, others to Sicily, Cyprus or Rhodes, thence to perform a pilgrimage to Jeruſalem.

After having remained ſixty-one days before the town of Africa, they broke up the ſiege, and ſet ſail from that country in ſight of the Saracens from the walls. This gave them ſuch joy that they ſounded horns and beat drums, and made ſo great a noiſe by their ſhoutings, as to be heard in the army of the Saracens. Several young knights mounted their horſes, and galloped to the place where the camp had been, to ſee if they could find any thing left behind. Agadinquor d'Oliferne and Brahadin de Tunis were the firſt to arrive; but the Chriſtians had ſo completely cleared the camp, that there was nothing for them to carry away.

The Saracens left their ſtation to examine the camp,

camp, and remained more than two hours noticing the manner and form of it. They praiſed much their ſubtlety in ſinking wells for freſh water, and, having for ſome time viewed the galleys under ſail, they returned to viſit their friends in the town of Africa. Others went to their quarters, and rejoiced greatly that the Chriſtians had not dared to remain longer. They held their power very cheap, and ſaid, they ſhould no longer fear, as they had done, the French or Genoeſe. They ſpoke truly, as I ſhall explain. When this ſiege was raiſed, the Saracens grew proud on the occaſion, for they ſaw the Genoeſe had exerted themſelves to their utmoſt power to annoy them: this expedition could not have been undertaken without an enormous expenſe, and they had not gained any thing. But they did not know the great loſſes the Chriſtians had ſuffered until that day, and I will tell you by what accident it happened. In the camp of the Chriſtians was found, lying on the ground, a Genoeſe varlet, who was too ill with a fever to be removed when the ſailors ſought for their men to embark on board the barges. The Saracens were delighted on finding this man, and ordered no harm to be done him. They carried him to the principal commanders of their army, and told them where they had had found him. An interpreter was ſent for to examine him; but at firſt he would not make any anſwers, conſidering himſelf as a dead man, and deſiring they would put him out of his pain.

The chiefs of the army, ſuch as Agadinquor d'Oliferne and Brahadin de Tunis, thought they ſhould gain nothing by his death; and to induce him to anſwer truly, without any equivocation, what queſtions ſhould be put to him, they promiſed to ſpare his life, and ſend him ſafe and well to his own country on board of the firſt galley that ſhould come thither from Genoa or Marſeilles, with a preſent of one hundred golden beſants. The varlet, hearing this, was freed from his fears of death and made eaſy; for he knew that theſe Saracens never break their words; and, as every one dies as late as he can, he ſaid to the interpreter, 'Make them all ſwear on their faith to keep what they have promiſed, and I will truly anſwer whatever you may aſk.' The interpreter repeated this to the lords, who having conſented to his demand, the varlet ſaid, 'Now aſk what queſtions you pleaſe, and I will anſwer them.' He was firſt aſked who he was, and his place of reſidence, and replied, 'Portenances*; [that his name was Simon Mollevin, and ſon to a captain of a galley at Portenances]:' then as to the commanders of the Chriſtian army. He named ſeveral; for, having kept company and drank with the heralds, he had often heard their names mentioned and had remembered ſome of them. He was aſked, if he knew the reaſons why they had ſo ſuddenly raiſed the ſiege and departed. To

* Portenances. In the MSS. Portenaucs. Q. if not Portoeros, one of the iſlands of Hieres, off Provence.

this

this he made a very prudent reply, by ſaying, he was ignorant of it, as he was not preſent at the council of war when it was determined on, and could only tell them what was the common report in the army. It was ſaid, that the French ſuſpected the Genoeſe of a deſign to betray them; but the Genoeſe declared this was falſe, and wrongfully imputed to them by the French. They had left the coaſt becauſe they were afraid to winter in this country, and riſk the loſs of as many knights as they had once done.

'Aſk him,' ſaid the lords to the interpreter, 'to explain this.' He replied, 'So great was the loſs on the day the combat was to have taken place between ten of your knights with ten of ours, that upwards of ſixty knights and ſquires, men of renown, died that day; and it was ſolely on this account,' as the Genoeſe ſaid, 'the ſiege was raiſed.' The ſaracen chiefs ſeemed very much pleaſed on hearing this, and made no further inquiries, but punctually kept the promiſe they had made him.

On his return to Portenances and Genoa, he related all that had paſſed and what anſwers he had made, for which he was no way blamed. The Saracens ſaid among themſelves,—'We have been very negligent in not taking better meaſures againſt this union of the French and Genoeſe; for, though they have been this time unſucceſsful againſt Africa, we muſt henceforward put our coaſt in a better ſtate of defence (which we may eaſily do); and

we muſt, in particular, guard the ſtraits of Morocco ſo ſtrongly that neither the Genoeſe nor Venetians ſhall carry their merchandiſe to Flanders through this ſtrait, without paying ſo great a toll as to make all the world wonder thereat, and even then it ſhall be conſidered as a matter of favour.'

What theſe Africans had propoſed they executed; and all the kingdoms to the ſouth, weſt and eaſt, formed an alliance, ſuch as Africa, Tunis, Bugia, Morocco, Benmarin, Tremeçen and Granada, with a reſolution of well guarding their coaſts, and equipping ſuch a fleet of galleys as ſhould make them maſters of the ſea, through hatred to the French and Genoeſe for their late ſiege of Africa. They interrupted ſo much the navigation of the Venetians and Genoeſe, that merchandiſe from Alexandria, Cairo, Damaſcus, Venice, Naples or Genoa, was difficult to be had in Flanders for money; and, in particular, every ſort of ſpicery was enormouſly dear.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

KING CHARLES OF FRANCE PROPOSES TO MARCH TO ITALY, TO FORM AN UNION OF THE CHURCH BY FORCE, AND THENCE TO BARBARY.—AMBASSADORS FROM ENGLAND OFFER PROPOSALS FOR A PEACE BETWEEN HIM AND KING RICHARD,—THE DEATH OF JOHN KING OF CASTILLE.—HE IS SUCCEEDED BY HIS SON HENRY, WHO IS CROWNED KING, THOUGH BUT NINE YEARS OF AGE.

WHEN the Chriſtian fleet ſailed from Africa, all croſſed the ſea, but did not diſembark at the ſame port. Part met with heavy tempeſts that put them in great danger: the greater part, however, returned to Genoa. Religious proceſſions were making in France for their ſafety, for they knew not what was become of them, not having had any intelligence ſince their departure.

The ladies of Coucy, of Sully, and the dauphineſs of Auvergne, were in great anxiety for their lords, as long as the expedition laſted, and were much rejoiced on hearing they were returned. The duke of Bourbon and the lord de Coucy ſet off privately for Paris, leaving their attendants behind, and arrived there about Martinmas-day. The king, as was natural, was well pleaſed to ſee them, and aſked many queſtions reſpecting Barbary, and the ſucceſs of the expedition. They

related all they had ſeen or heard, which was eagerly liſtened to by the king and his brother, the duke of Touraine. The king ſaid, 'If we can manage to reſtore union to the church, and eſtabliſh a ſound peace between us and England, we ſhould very much like to lead a great army to Barbary, to exalt the Chriſtian faith, confound the infidels, and acquit the ſouls of our predeceſſors, king Philip of happy memory, and king John our grandfather; for both of them put on the vermilion croſs, to paſs the ſea for the holy land; and they would have done ſo, if violent wars had not nearly overturned their kingdom. Now, if we can reſtore union and peace to the church, and lengthen our truce with the Engliſh to a proper term, we are reſolved to undertake this expedition.'

Such were the converſations between the king of France and his uncle, the duke of Bourbon, and the lord de Coucy, and thus did things remain. By degrees, thoſe who had been in Africa returned home. The king lived at Paris the whole ſeaſon, reſiding ſometimes at the Louvre, at others, with the queen, at the hôtel de St. Pol.

About St. Andrew's day, when the knights were almoſt all returned from Barbary, circumſtances which ſerved for a topic of converſation with every one, another expedition was talked of, at the Court of France, but I cannot ſay who was the firſt promoter of it. The king of France, who had a great love of arms, was thus addreſſed; 'Sire, your devotion and inclination naturally lead

lead you to wiſh to carry an expedition againſt the infidels beyond ſea, to conquer the holy land.' 'That is very true,' anſwered the king: 'it conſtitutes the occupation of my thoughts night and day.' I believe the propoſal was made by the lord de la Riviere or ſir John le Mercier; for they were both too much attached to pope Clement, and ſo greatly in the king's favour, that whatever they ſaid was done. Others, who were at the time in the king's company, ſaid; 'Sire, you cannot, in conſcience, undertake ſuch an expedition, while the church is diſunited: begin with the head, and your enterpriſe will end the better.' 'How would you have me begin?' aſked the king. 'Sire,' replied they, 'at this moment you have nothing on your hands. You are at peace with the Engliſh; and you may, during the truce, undertake, if you pleaſe, an expedition: we do not ſee a more brilliant one, than to march a large army to Rome and deſtroy this anti-pope, whom the Romans, through error, have elected and placed on the throne of St. Peter. This may be done, if you exert yourſelf: a more meritorious or honourable ſervice cannot be performed; and the inſtant the anti-pope and his cardinals ſhall learn you are advancing againſt them with a large army, they will ſurrender themſelves to your mercy.'

The king liſtened attentively to this, and ſaid he would conſider of it. In truth, he was warmly attached to pope Clement; for the preceding year, when at Avignon, he had received the greateſt

honours and attentions from him, and he had given to him, his brother and uncles, more than they had aſked. This he thought was deſerving ſome return, and, on his taking leave, he had promiſed the pope, that he would attend to his affairs in ſuch wiſe that the effect of his interference would ſoon be known. He conſidered himſelf bound, therefore, to do ſomething in his behalf.

At this time, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy were at Paris; and it was generally reported, that ſoon after March the king would ſet out from Paris, for Savoy and Lombardy, and that the duke of Savoy was to ſend his couſin-german with him. The king was to have under his command the duke of Touraine and four thouſand ſpears; the duke of Burgundy two thouſand; the duke of Berry the ſame number; the conſtable of France two thouſand Bretons and Saintongers, from the flat countries; the duke of Bourbon one thouſand ſpears; the count de St. Pol, and the lord de Coucy one thouſand ſpears; and all theſe men at arms were to be engaged and paid for three months, and thus from time to time.

The pope and cardinals at Avignon were as much rejoiced, when intelligence of this was carried to them, as if the expedition were already commenced. It was propoſed in the council that the king ſhould invite the duke of Brittany to form part of it, as they did not think it prudent to leave him behind. The king in conſequence wrote him a handſome letter, to explain the plan and intention of the expedition, and to invite him to make

make part of it, which he ſent by an honourable man, one of his uſhers at arms.

When the duke of Brittany had read the letter, he burſt out into laughter, and calling to him the lord de Montboucher, ſaid,—'See what my lord of France writes me. 'He has undertaken to ſet out in the month of March next for Rome, and deſtroy, by the power of his arms, pope Boniface and his cardinals. As God is my help, he will never ſucceed, but ſhortly have other flax to ſpin, which will force him to give up ſuch fooliſh buſineſs. He deſires me to accompany him with two thouſand lances. As I wiſh to pay him every honour that is his due, I ſhall write a very civil anſwer back to pleaſe him, and ſay that, if he perſiſt in undertaking the expedition mentioned in his letter, he ſhall not go without me, ſince he is deſirous of my company; but I tell you, lord de Montboucher, that I ſhall not trouble any of my vaſſals on the occaſion, for I repeat, it will end in words.'

The duke of Brittany ſent very handſome letters by the uſher at arms, to the king at Paris, who was well ſatisfied with the anſwer. No one attempted to diſcourage the king reſpecting this expedition, for it was highly agreeable to the knights and ſquires, as it made them of importance, and employed their time. All ranks of perſons made their preparations, even the clergy, and the provinces were willing to tax themſelves to ſend men at arms, at their expenſe, to ſerve the king.

This

This expedition ended, however, as the duke of Brittany had foretold; and I will relate what occaſioned its being broken off. About Candlemas, intelligence was brought to the king and his council, which they had not thought of, nor foreſeen. Part of the king of England's cabinet-council were ſent in handſome ſtate to wait on the king of France at Paris. At the head of this legation were, ſir Thomas Percy, ſir Lewis Clifford, ſir Robert Bricquet and other knights, whoſe names I never heard. The arrival of theſe knights at Paris was a great ſurpriſe, though the king had been informed of their coming; for the king of England had written to him, to ſay he ſhould in a few days ſend ſome of his council to Paris, if he would be there. The king of France was very anxious to learn why theſe ambaſſadors had been ſent in ſuch haſte, and what they had to propoſe.

The Engliſh knights diſmounted at the ſign of the Château de Feſtu, in the ſtreet of la Croix du Tiroir, where they had fixed their lodgings. The king of France was at the Louvre, and the duke of Touraine with him: his three uncles, and the conſtable of France, were likewiſe at their different hôtels in Paris. The Engliſh arrived at Paris in the afternoon, and ſtaid the remainder of that day and the night at their inn: on the morrow, about nine o'clock, they mounted their horſes, which were handſomely decorated, and went in ſtate to the Louvre, where the king was waiting for them. He was attended by his brother, his uncles, the count de St. Pol, the lord de

de Coucy, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, conſtable of France, ſir John de Vienne, ſir Guy de la Trimouille, and other great barons.

The ambaſſadors diſmounted in the ſquare before the Louvre, and, on entering the gate, were met by the lord de la Riviere, ſir John le Mercier, ſir Helion de Lignac, ſir Peter de Villiers, ſir William de la Trimouille and ſir William Marcel, who received them as knights of the king of England's council, and conducted them moſt reſpectfully to a handſome apartment where the king of France was. On their entrance, they took off their hoods, and bowed very low. Sir Thomas Percy was the bearer of their credential letters, which he preſented to the king, who, on receiving them, made the knights riſe. When they were riſen, they retired ſome paces back. The king of France, having peruſed the letters called to him his brother and uncles, and ſhewed their contents. His uncles then ſaid, 'My lord, call to you the knights from England, and demand the cauſe of their coming hither.' The king did ſo, and the knights were aſked the purport of their credential letters. Sir Thomas, in reply, ſaid,—'Dear ſire, it is the wiſh of our lord the king of England, that his moſt confidential counſellors ſuch as his uncles of Lancaſter, York or Gloceſter, or ſome prelates of England of whom that country has the beſt opinion for ſenſe and prudence, ſhould meet others of like character, of your council, that they might conſider on the means of forming a ſolid peace between you and him

him and your allies. This, if it could be effected, would give him ſuch great ſatisfaction, that he would not complain of any trouble or pain his counſellors may endure, whom he ſhall ſend acroſs the ſea to Amiens, or any other appointed place, for the carrying on this negociation, and we are come hither from our lord to propoſe this matter, and to learn your intentions upon it.'

The king replied,—' Sir Thomas, you and your companions are welcome, and your viſit has given us very great pleaſure. You will not leave Paris immediately: in the mean time, we will aſſemble our council, and, before your departure, you ſhall have ſuch anſwer as ſhall be ſatisfactory to you.'

The Engliſh were well pleaſed with this reply, and the king entered on other matters of converſation. It was now dinner-time; and the Engliſh knights were detained to dine in the Louvre, and given in charge to the Lord de Coucy and the lord de la Riviere, who led them into a very richly ornamented apartment, where a table was ſpread for them. They dined well, and at their leiſure, the lord de Coucy and the conſtable keeping them company. When dinner was over, they went into the king's apartment, and ſtaid until wine and ſpices were brought in ſplendid comfit boxes of gold and ſilver. After the knights had partaken of theſe, they took leave of the king and his lords, and deſcended into the court, where they mounted their horſes and returned to their lodgings.

The

The propoſals ſir Thomas Percy had brought from England, were exceedingly agreeable to the king of France, to his uncle the duke of Burgundy, and to others of his council; but not to all, eſpecially to thoſe who were intereſted concerning the pope of Avignon. They foreſaw, that if negotiations were once begun between the two crowns, it would require a long time to bring them to a concluſion, and thus retard the expedition that was intended againſt Rome, to reduce pope Boniface and his cardinals to the obedience of pope Clement. The object of peace, however, was ſo welcome to all parts of Chriſtendom, and would be of ſuch advantage to every country that no one dared to ſay any thing againſt it. Beſides, the duke of Burgundy and his council and the duke of Bourbon were unanimous in their opinion with the king.

The king of France ſhewed much attention to ſir Thomas Percy and his companions; but there was one knight among them, called ſir Robert Bricquet, whom he did not ſee with pleaſure, for he was a Frenchman, had always been of the party of England or Navarre, and was now a knight of the king of England's chamber. The king prudently diſſembled his thoughts; but, when he converſed with them, he always addreſſed himſelf to ſir Thomas Percy, ſir Lewis Clifford, or to ſir John Clanvow. The king ſaid,—'We ſhall be happy to ſee a ſolid peace eſtabliſhed between our adverſary of England and us, for the war and quarrel has laſted too long a time; and

I wiſh

I wiſh you to underſtand that it ſhall be no way our fault if the negotiations be not happily concluded.'

'Sire,' replied the knights, 'our lord the king of England, who has ſent us hither, has the ſame peaceable inclinations; and ſaid, on our departure, that it ſhould not be to his blame if theſe wars and diſſentions were not put an end to, for they had laſted too long; and he was much ſurpriſed ſome prudent means had not been ſooner thought of for this purpoſe.' 'Well,' replied the king, 'we ſhall ſee what good affection he bears us.'

The Engliſh remained at Paris ſix days, and dined every day with one or other of the dukes. In the mean time, the matter of their coming had been debated in council, and it was ſettled that the king of France, his uncles, and his cabinet-council, ſhould be at Amiens the middle of March, and wait there for the king of England, his uncles and council, if they were willing to meet them. The Engliſh knights engaged, that on their ſide there ſhould not be any delay, and that ſome of the king's uncles, if not all, would be at Amiens on the appointed day.

Thus was this buſineſs concluded; and the day before the ambaſſadors were to take leave of the king and quit Paris, he went to the palace, and magnificently entertained at dinner theſe Engliſh lords: his brother and uncles were preſent: he made ſir Thomas Percy ſit at his table, calling him couſin, from his relationſhip with the earl of Northumberland.

During

During the dinner, ſir Thomas Percy and his companions were preſented with rich and handſome jewels, all but ſir Robert Bricquet: he was paſſed unnoticed. The knight, who preſented them in the name of the king, (ſir Peter Villiers, high ſteward of the houſehold) ſaid to him; 'When you ſhall have done ſervice acceptable to the king, he is rich enough to reward you for it,' and then paſſed by. Sir Robert was melancholy on hearing this ſpeech, and then firſt learnt he was diſagreeable to the king of France: he was therefore forced to put up with the ſlight as well as he could.

When dinner was over, and they had waſhed and the tables were removed, grace having been ſaid, minſtrels of ſong and others were called in, who performed, as uſual, before the king and his company. After this, ſir Thomas Percy advanced, and, caſting himſelf on his knee, ſaid; 'Very dear ſire, I and my companions are much ſurpriſed at one thing. You have moſt ſplendidly entertained us, and preſented us with rich gifts, for which we feel very thankful; but ſir Robert Bricquet, who is a knight at arms, and chamberlain to our ſovereign lord the king of England, has been paſſed by, and we would willingly know the reaſon of it.'

The king of France replied; 'Thomas, the knight you have named, ſince you wiſh to know the cauſe of his being overlooked, ought not to have taken part againſt us; for, had he been made priſoner in war, his ranſom would have inſtantly been paid by his death.' On ſaying this, he raiſed

up

up ſir Thomas Percy, and converſed on other matters.

Shortly after, wine and ſpices were brought, which having partaken of at their pleaſure, the ambaſſadors took leave of the king, returned to their lodgings, and paid the amount of their expenſes. On the morrow, they departed from Paris, and continued their journey to England, where they related to the king and his uncles every thing that had paſſed, greatly extolling the king of France's magnificent entertainments, and the rich gifts he had made them.

We will, for a while, leave ſpeaking of England, and ſay what was paſſing in Caſtille. You have heard of the alliance between the king of Caſtille and the duke of Lancaſter, who had claimed that crown in right of his ducheſs, the lady Conſtance, eldeſt daughter of the late don Pedro, by whom he had a beautiful daughter, that was married to don Henry, prince of Galicia, heir to the crown of Caſtille. This marriage confirmed the peace between them.

About two years after the celebration of theſe nuptials, king John of Caſtille departed this life, and was buried in the city of Burgos. On this event, the great barons and prelates of the realm aſſembled, and declared their intentions to have for their king the young prince of Galicia. This was done, and the prince was crowned in the ninth year of his age: his queen was ſix years older. Thus was the daughter of the duke of Lancaſter,

by

by the lady Conſtance, queen of Caſtille, and of all the poſſeſſions of don Pedro, don Henry and don John, excepting thoſe parts which had been aſſigned to the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter for their joint lives. They had, beſide, a penſion of one hundred thouſand florins, for which four of the moſt opulent cities in Caſtille were pledged. The duke of Lancaſter had the pleaſure of ſeeing his two daughters queens of Caſtille and Portugal.

We will now ſpeak of the expedition made by John count d'Armagnac into Lombardy, for the matter requires it.

CHAP. XXIV.

OF THE EXPEDITION OF COUNT JOHN D'ARMAGNAC INTO LOMBARDY.—HIS DEATH, AT THE SIEGE OF ALEXANDRIA.

THE intention of the count d'Armagnac to lead an army into Lombardy has been already mentioned in this hiſtory. His object was to aſſiſt his ſiſter-german and her huſband, ſir Bernabo Viſconti, eldeſt ſon to that ſir Bernabo whom the duke of Milan had unnaturally put to death. This duke was Galeas Viſconti, count de Vertus, whoſe daughter the duke of Touraine had married.

The lady of ſir Bernabo was daughter to ſir

John d'Armagnac, and, being in great affliction, had recourſe to her brothers, to whom ſhe related the miſery of her ſituation, her poverty and neceſſity, and humbly prayed their pity, and that they would defend her againſt that tyrant the count de Vertus, who had diſinherited her without the ſmalleſt reaſon.

The count d'Armagnac promiſed his ſiſter that he would comply with her requeſt, and had declared, that whatever it might coſt him to recover her rights, he would exert himſelf in the attempt to the utmoſt of his power. What he had engaged to do, he performed; for I have before mentioned, that in conjunction with the dauphin d'Auvergne, he had entered into treaties with many of the captains of forts in Auvergne, Limouſin, Quercy or other parts, who, under colour of fighting for the king of England, had done the greateſt miſchiefs to France. Theſe garriſons of Engliſh, Gaſcons and Bretons, received different ſums, and a pardon from France on ſurrendering their caſtles and quitting the kingdom. They readily, therefore, engaged to follow the count d'Armagnac into Lombardy, and retired until the proper time towards the rivers Rhône and Saone. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy permitted them to take what purveyances they pleaſed in their lordſhips, for they were very deſirous to be rid of them.

The lieutenant of the king of France for Dauphiny was at that time ſir Enguerrand Durdin, and the king had written to him to permit all men

at

at arms and their companions, who ſhould ſay they belonged to the count d'Armagnac, to paſs freely through Dauphiny, and to have whatever they might be in need of, for their money.

The count de Foix, hearing at his reſidence at Orthès of the large armament the count d'Armagnac was raiſing, began to be alarmed, for he was of a ſuſpicious temper. He had indeed learnt, for common report flies every where, that it was intended for Lombardy, againſt the duke of Milan; but as the anceſtors of this count d'Armagnac, and himſelf and his brother ſir Bernard, had been at war with him, he was doubtful if this expedition might not in the end be directed againſt him. Not to be unprepared, therefore, he had reinforced and revictualled all his caſtles, that if they ſhould make an attack, he might be enabled to meet them. But neither the count d'Armagnac nor his brother had ſuch thoughts: they were deſirous ſtrictly to obſerve the truce now eſtabliſhed between them.

Many knights and ſquires from Gaſcony, England and Brittany, who had engaged their ſervices to the count d'Armagnac, had he declared war againſt the count de Foix, would have left him and joined his adverſary; ſo much was the count de Foix beloved by men at arms for his liberality and courage.

When the ducheſs of Touraine was informed that the count d'Armagnac was preparing to lead a large body of men at arms into Lombardy, to make war on her father the duke of Milan, and that the dukes of Berry and Burgundy con-

ſented to it, from their deſire to rid the kingdom of ſo many pillagers which had of late ſo grievouſly haraſſed it, ſhe did not remain idle, but inſtantly wrote letters to the count de Vertus to give notice of it, that he might provide himſelf accordingly. The duke of Milan was already informed of this intention of the count d'Armagnac, and had collected men at arms wherever he could find them, and reinforced his towns and caſtles with men, ſtores and proviſion, concluding he ſhould have a war to ſupport againſt this count d'Armagnac.

About the middle of March, the greater part of the men at arms were aſſembled in the country near Avignon: between that place and Lyons, on the banks of the Rhône, were fifteen thouſand horſe. They croſſed that river where it was the eaſieſt to paſs, and, entering Dauphiny, took up their quarters in the villages or fields. Others continued their route, the more ſpeedily to clear the paſſes of the mountains, which are dangerous for man and horſe.

The count d'Armagnac, his brother, with other knights, viſited pope Clement and his cardinals at Avignon, and offered to ſerve them and the church againſt the tyrant of Lombardy, for which they felt themſelves obliged and returned many thanks. They ſtaid at Avignon eight days, while their troops paſſed: they then took leave of the pope and cardinals, and made ready to follow them. The two brothers, ſir John and ſir Bernard d'Armagnac, here ſeparated, and thus ſir John addreſſed him: 'Fair brother, you will now return

return to Comminges and Armagnac, to guard our lands, for all the forts are not yet free from the marauders. There is Lourde, which ſir Arnaute de Béarn holds in the name of the king of England; and Bouteville is garriſoned by Foixiens under the command of ſir John de Greilly, ſon to the late captal de Buch. Notwithſtanding there is a truce between the count de Foix and us for the preſent, he is ſo bold and enterpriſing a knight, that we are never ſure what his intentions may be; and for theſe reaſons I wiſh you to return inſtantly home. You ſhall hear very frequently from me during my abſence, and do you write conſtantly.'

Sir Bernard readily conſented to what his brother had propoſed, for he thought it prudent and well adviſed: he had not beſide any great inclination to croſs the mountains. Juſt on his departure, the count ſaid,—'Bernard, you will go hence to our couſin Raymond de Touraine, who has married my couſin the daughter of the prince of Orange, and is now engaged in war with the comtat Venaiſſin, that belongs to the pope: entreat of him, for I have been ſo requeſted by the pope, that he make his preparations to follow me in this expedition, and he ſhall be my companion in all things: I will wait for him at Gap*, ſituated among the mountains.' Sir Bernard promiſed to convey this meſſage, and the brothers ſeparated, never to ſee each other again.

* Gap,—an ancient city in Dauphiny, capital of the Gapençois, generality of Grenoble.

The count d'Armagnac took the road leading to the town of Gap, and ſir Bernard that to the caſtle of Boulogne, where ſir Raymond de Touraine reſided, who received him very kindly. Sir Bernard eloquently delivered the meſſage from his brother, to induce him the more readily to comply with the requeſt contained in it. Sir Raymond replied,—'Fair couſin, before your brother, the count d'Armagnac, ſhall have advanced far into Lombardy, or laid ſiege to any town, it is very poſſible that I follow him, but it is full time as yet for me and my people to begin our march. If my couſin therefore ſends me intelligence about the middle of May I will ſet out, for by that time I hope to make an end of my war againſt my uncle, the pope at Avignon, and his cardinals, who not only refuſe me juſtice, but detain from me, by force, every thing that my uncle, pope Gregory, diſpoſed of in my favour. They think to tire me out and excommunicate me, but they ſhall be miſtaken. They engage knights and ſquires to make war on me, by granting them abſolutions, but ſuch have no talents for war; and I ſhall have more effective men at arms for a thouſand florins, than they can obtain by their abſolutions for ſeven years.'

'My good couſin,' anſwered ſir Bernard, 'keep to your reſolution: what you ſay is true; and I would not, by any means, adviſe you to act otherwiſe than you do: juſt as you have ſpoken will I write to my brother d'Armagnac.'

They were one whole day together, in the caſtle of

of Boulogne. On the morrow, ſir Bernard d'Armagnac departed, and, croſſing the Rhône at the Pont du Saint Eſprit, rode over the mountains, through Quercy, until he reached his deſtination, leaving his brother to manage for himſelf his war with the count de Vertus. Before, however, he left Pont du Saint Eſprit, he wrote letters to the count d'Armagnac, to inform him of the anſwer he had received from ſir Raymond de Touraine, and had alſo letters from his brother, on his road towards Gap. Having read their contents, he purſued his journey without farther attending to them.

We will continue our hiſtory of the count John d'Armagnac until we bring it to a concluſion, without ſpeaking of other events.

It was his great love and affection for his ſiſter and brother, who had been fraudulently diſinherited by the count de Vertus, who ſtiled himſelf lord of Milan, that had induced him thus gaily to march into the plains of Piedmont and Lombardy. There were likewiſe two very juſt reaſons for this armament; one was, the carrying away ſuch numbers of pillagers, who had for ſo long a time oppreſſed and robbed many of the provinces in France, for by this means the country was cleared of them: the other, to aſſiſt his ſiſter and her huſband, who had unjuſtly been deprived of their inheritance, ſo that he had, on every account, juſtice on his ſide. The companions were unanimous to ſerve him, and exclaimed,—'Let us cheerfully attack theſe Lombards: we have a juſt

quarrel and a good captain, which will aſſiſt our cauſe, and we are going to the richeſt country in the world; for Lombardy receives the fat from other parts; and, as the Lombards are rich and cowards, we ſhall gain great profit. We, who are captains, ſhall return ſo enormouſly rich, that we need never more think of war, nor carry on any future warfare.'

Such were the converſations on their march; and when they came to a rich country they halted there for ſome time, to refreſh themſelves and their horſes. At the time I am now ſpeaking of, that gallant Engliſh knight, ſir John Hactonde *, was making war on the Florentines for pope Boniface, and had fixed his quarters in the neighbourhood of Florence. That country as well as Perugia were in rebellion againſt the pope. The count d'Armagnac thought if he could gain the aſſiſtance of ſir John Hawkwood, who was a moſt enterpriſing and courageous knight, he ſhould be more ſucceſsful in his war. In conſequence, during his reſidence at Grande †, at the entrance into Piedmont, he wrote to him long letters, explanatory of his ſituation, and the reaſons which urged him to make war on the duke of Milan. Having properly ſealed theſe letters, he gave them to a prudent meſſenger, who performed his duty well, in delivering them to ſir John Hawkwood: he was then near Florence, and had under his com-

* Sir John Hactonde.—Sir John Hawkwood.

† Grande,—in the MSS. Grando. Q. Grenoble.

mand

mand full two thouſand combatants. He read the letters, or had them read to him. On hearing their contents, he was well pleaſed, and replied, 'that as ſoon as he ſhould have put an end to the war he was then engaged in, he would not attend to any other before he had joined the count d'Armagnac.

The ſquire of the count, who had brought theſe letters, was an honourable man, and replied,—'Sir, you ſpeak well, and to the point: have the goodneſs to put into writing what you ſay, that my lord, the count d'Armagnac, may be the more aſſured of your intentions.' 'Very willingly,' ſaid ſir John Hawkwood; 'and it is but right, ſince my pleaſure and will are to meet him.' In the courſe of two or three days, the letters were written and given to the ſquire who had come from the count d'Armagnac. He inſtantly ſet out on his return, and found the count near to Pignerol *. There were great negotiations going forward between him and the marquis de Saluces, and the marquis was to join him in his war againſt Milan. The news the ſquire brought from ſir John Hawkwood was highly agreeable to the count d'Armagnac. He ſaid, 'that if it pleaſed God, he would this ſeaſon make ſo ſevere a war on the count de Vertus, that he ſhould be glad to accept of reaſonable terms, or he would periſh in the attempt.'

* Pignerol,—an epiſcopal town of Piedmont, at the entrance of the valley of Perouſe.

From

From what you have heard, you may ſuppoſe the count d'Armagnac had a great deſire to aid his ſiſter, and it was compaſſion for her that urged him to it. When his men at arms had paſſed the mountains, and had gained the rich plains of Piedmont, near to Turin, they were not long before they made excurſions, and committed great deſtruction on the ſurrounding villages, which could not any way withſtand them.

The count d'Armagnac laid ſiege to Aſti *, intending to wait there for ſir John Hawkwood. Purveyances came from all quarters; and the companions ranſomed ſmall forts for proviſion, and, until their wants were ſupplied, they took every thing away. The country of Pignerol and the territories of the marquis of Montferrat were open to their foraging for themſelves and horſes. There came likewiſe great quantities of proviſion to them from Dauphiny and Savoy. Many leant to the count d'Armagnac from the juſtice of his quarrel with the count de Vertus, who had wickedly put to death his uncle Bernabo, to gain his inheritance; and, although ſeveral of the great lords of that country were ſilent on the ſubject, they felt much compaſſion for thoſe who had been thus diſinherited.

During the ſiege of Aſti, very agreeable news was brought to the count d'Armagnac from ſir John Hawkwood. He informed him, that the

* Aſti,—an ancient town of Piedmont, five leagues N. E. from Albi, eight S. W. from Caſal.

Florentines

Florentines and Venetians had ſubmitted to the mercy of the pope; that he was to be paid ſixty thouſand florins, for himſelf and his companions; and that, the moment theſe were received, he would march with five hundred men at arms and a thouſand infantry towards the frontiers of Genoa, and, whether his enemies would or not, he intended to force a paſſage to join him. The count d'Armagnac and his army were much pleaſed at the thoughts of being aſſiſted by ſo able a commander as ſir John Hawkwood; and he was adviſed to break up the ſiege of Aſti, and transfer it to a larger town called Alexandria, ſituated at the entrance of Lombardy, and, after they ſhould have conquered it, to advance to Breſſueil *, which is alſo a large and handſome city.

The ſiege was in conſequence transferred from Aſti to Alexandria, which is a fine city, and ſeated in a rich plain on the frontiers of Piedmont and Lombardy, in the direct road to Genoa. The men at arms had croſſed the Teſino, and lodged themſelves at their eaſe in this plentiful country.

Sir Galeas, lord of Milan †, count de Vertus, reſided in the city of Pavia, and daily heard of his enemies eſtabliſhing themſelves in his country: but his greateſt ſurpriſe was, how the count d'Armagnac found money to ſatisfy the large body of men at arms he had brought with him. His

* Breſſueil. Q. Breſcia.

† He was created duke of Milan 1395, by Winceſlaus king of the Romans.—*Dict. Hiſt.*

council,

council, with whom he converſed on this ſubject, replied,—' Sir, theſe are free companions, and part of thoſe pillagers who have ſo long harraſſed France: they do not require pay, but to ſeek adventures, and run the chance of gain from plundering the country. In order to deliver France from them, after the ſurrender of their ſtrong holds, the count d'Armagnac leads them hither. The duke of Berry and the dauphin of Auvergne, whoſe lands they had ſorely oppreſſed, treated with them by means of the count d'Armagnac, who offered the king of France and the above mentioned lords to engage them in his quarrel with you. By dint of money he purchaſed their forts; and the king of France granted them a free pardon for all their paſt deeds, on condition they joined the count d'Armagnac; and whatever they could conquer in theſe countries was to be their own. They therefore aſk no pay; and there are among them men at arms that have five or ſix horſes, who, if in their own country, would be conſtrained to go on foot like abſolute paupers. They adventure themſelves boldly, and it is hazardous to engage with them, for they are all of determined courage. The beſt advice we can give is, that you guard well your cities and principal towns, which are ſtrongly garriſoned and well provided with all things; for they have no artillery, nor any machines for carrying on a ſiege worth thinking of. They will advance to the barriers of your towns to ſkirmiſh and do gallant deeds of arms; but they will not gain any thing you may regret, if one may judge by

by what has paſſed, for they have now been in this country more than two months, and have only conquered a ſmall and inſignificant fort. Let them therefore come and go, without offering them combat; for they will ſoon be tired of the war, and will be defeated without a battle. When they have deſtroyed all the low countries, they will be in want of proviſion, and famine will force them to return, if no worſe accidents befal them. You muſt order your men at arms to keep in bodies near to each other, that, in caſe of need, they may ſuccour and give advice to thoſe of the garriſons who may want it. Reinforce with them all your towns and caſtles; for the rich citizens are not accuſtomed to war, and will not defend themſelves like knights or ſquires who have been brought up to the profeſſion. Send ſome of your chivalry into Alexandria: you will gain doubly by it, for your city will be more ably defended, and your ſubjects will love you with greater affection when they ſee you are attentive to them in their diſtreſs. You are beſide bounden to do this, for they pay you taxes and other levies for your governing and and taking care of them. Your enemies cannot have a ſufficient force to ſurround Alexandria on all ſides, and prevent the men at arms you ſhall ſend thither from entering the town; and, when the inhabitants ſhall ſee them arrive, their courage will be raiſed, their attachment to you increaſed, and any treaties they might have thought of entering into with your enemies will be put an end to.'

The

The lord of Milan followed the advice that had been given him, and, without delay, ſent thither a body of knights and men at arms that were in his pay. On being muſtered, they amounted to five hundred lances; and an ancient knight, who had long been uſed to arms, called ſir James de la Berme, was appointed their commander. They rode through bye ways until they arrived at Alexandria in the evening, and entered it, when their enemies had retired fatigued to their quarters, from ſkirmiſhing at the barriers, for they could not remain idle. The citizens were rejoiced at the arrival of ſir James de la Berme and his companions, and not without cauſe; for the count d'Armagnac, not having ſeen any men at arms during the three days he lay before it, concluded none were in the town, and had kept up a continual aſſault at the barriers; but, ſmall as the defence was, it had done ſo well, that the Armagnacs had not gained any advantage.

Sir James de la Berme, on entering the town, retired with his men to the lodgings which had been aſſigned them, and, having taken ſome refreſhment, they were waited on by the principal inhabitants, to congratulate them on their arrival. He inquired into the ſtate of the town, and the numbers and ſituation of the enemy, in order that he might act accordingly. The moſt intelligent replied, 'that from the moment the count d'Armagnac had come, there had never been any ceſſation of ſkirmiſhes and attacks on the barriers.' 'Well,' replied the knight, 'to-morrow, if it pleaſe

pleaſe God, we will ſee how they bear themſelves, and what they may be inclined to do. They are ignorant of my arrival, and I will lay an ambuſh for them, and make a private ſally.' 'Ah, my lord,' ſaid thoſe who had before ſpoken to him, 'you muſt be very cautious how you act, for they are ſixteen thouſand horſe at leaſt, and, ſhould they diſcover you in the open plain, they will ſurround and overpower you by their numbers, without ſtriking a blow.' The knight anſwered, 'We will conſider more of it; for, ſince we are come, we muſt attempt ſome deeds of arms.' The converſation now ended, and every one returned to his home; but the knight told his men, ſecretly, he intended making a ſally and placing an ambuſh, that all might be prepared againſt the morrow.

The next day, ſir James de la Berme and his troops being armed, made a ſally through a private gate, on the oppoſite ſide of the town to the place where the beſiegers lay. He was accompanied, at the diſtance of half a league, by about three hundred of the townſmen, to a narrow valley where they could not be ſeen. He had left two hundred without the barriers, with orders, if they were attacked to defend themſelves faintly, retreating towards this valley, where they would be ſupported by the ambuſcade. They promiſed punctual obedience to theſe orders. The day was exceedingly hot; but the count d'Armagnac was young and enterpriſing: having heard maſs in his pavilion and drank a cup, he demanded his arms, and, having completely equipped himſelf, diſ-

played

played only his pennon, and was attended by no more than one hundred men; for he did not expect to meet with greater oppoſition than uſual, and advanced at a ſlow pace towards the barriers. True it is, that ſome few men at arms followed him by degrees; but others ſaid,—'What ſignifies arming? and why ſhould we give ourſelves ſo much trouble, when we cannot meet with any one at the barriers worth fighting with?' They ſtaid, therefore, within their camp, eating and drinking. The count d'Armagnac, on coming to the barriers, began to overthrow and beat down many of thoſe poſted there to receive him, as good men at arms know how to do; but the townſmen did not wait long, before they began to retreat ſlowly towards the ambuſcade.

When ſir James de la Berme ſaw it was time, he ſallied forth out of the ambuſh, and the Armagnacs were ſurrounded and attacked on all ſides. They valiantly defended themſelves, and were reinforced by little and little with men from the camp. Many gallant deeds were done this day, which was the feaſt of St. James and St. Chriſtopher. It was ſo very hot, that thoſe who bore arms thought they were in an oven, for there was not any wind; and the young men at arms were overpowered by the heat, and unable to exert themſelves. Add to this, that the force of the lord de Milan was three to one of the Armagnacs.

The duſt oppreſſed them ſo much, they could not ſee each other; but the Armagnacs, in this, ſuffered

ſuffered the moſt. This was an unfortunate day for the count, who was ſo overcome by the heat, and near fainting, that he withdrew from the battle, without friend or foe knowing whither he was gone. He had retreated to a ſmall grove of alders, through which ran a little brook; and he no ſooner felt his feet in the water, than he thought he was in paradiſe, and ſeated himſelf by the ſide of the ſtream. He, with ſome difficulty, took off his helmet, and remained covered only by the linen ſcull-cap, and then plunged his face in the water, at the ſame time, unfortunately, drinking large draughts; for he was thirſty from the heat, and could not quench it. He drank ſo much, that his blood was chilled, and a numbneſs of limbs ſeized him, with a ſtrong inclination to faint. He could not move, and loſt the uſe of his ſpeech. His attendants knew not was become of him, and were the more uneaſy, becauſe many priſoners had been made: they therefore ceaſed fighting.

A ſhort time after this, a ſquire belonging to the duke of Milan perceived the count d'Armagnac, and wondered much, when he ſaw him, who he could be; for it was viſible he muſt be ſome knight or man of high rank: he called out, 'Who are you? Surrender; for you are my priſoner.'—The count heard him, but could not make any anſwer, as he was unable to articulate, but held out his hand, and made ſigns that he ſurrendered. The ſquire then endeavoured to raiſe him, but, finding his attempts vain, ſeated himſelf beſide

him, while the ſkirmiſh was ſtill continued, and many gallant actions performed.

Sir James de la Berme, being a prudent and valorous knight, perceiving the day was his own, and that many of the enemy were killed and wounded, but that his men were growing weary, and the Armagnacs increaſing by freſh men from their camp, ordered a retreat to Alexandria, his men vigorouſly defending themſelves as they retired. The ſquire, who had fortunately found the count d'Armagnac in the ſtate I have mentioned, unwilling to leave him behind, for he thought him a perſon of diſtinction, called to ſome of his companions to aſſiſt in carrying him to the town; and declared that whatever he ſhould receive for his ranſom, he would handſomely divide with them for the trouble they would have.

They complied with his requeſt, and, with ſome difficulty, carried him to the ſquire's lodgings in the city, where the count was diſarmed, undreſſed and put to bed. By this time, ſir James de la Berme had, with his men, re-entered the place, and barricaded the bars and gates, having many priſoners with them. They diſarmed and refreſhed themſelves with what they found at their quarters, as did likewiſe the Armagnacs, who had been at this ſkirmiſh, on their return to the army.

When it was mentioned in the camp that no one knew what was become of the count d'Armagnac, they were much alarmed, and ſome went to ſearch the

the places in the neighbourhood where the skirmish had been fought, but, to the great dismay of their companions, they returned without having discovered any traces of him. The squire, into whose hands he had fallen, desirous to know who he was, addressed himself to a Gascon squire, a man of honour, that had been made prisoner, and begged of him to accompany him, with the person who had captured him, to his lodgings. They went thither, and the Lombardy squire led the Gascon to his chamber, where the count d'Armagnac lay bitterly bemoaning. He brought a candle near his face, and said to the Gascon, 'My friend, do you know who this man is?' The Gascon, leaning down to examine his features, instantly recognised him, and replied,—'Yes, I ought to know him well; for it is our commander, the count d'Armagnac.' The Lombardy squire was rejoiced to hear his prisoner was of such distinction; but the count was so very ill, he heard nothing they asked of him. Upon which, his master said; 'Come, come, let us leave him quiet, that he may recover himself,' and they all quitted the chamber. He died, however, that same night.

When, on the morrow, it was known that the count d'Armagnac had died in his bed at Alexandria, sir James de la Berme would not that it should be made secret, but sent information of the event by some of the prisoners to the camp, to see how they would act on the occasion.

The whole army were in diſmay on hearing their loſs; for they had now no commander in chief to look up to, as they were moſtly all free companions. They therefore ſaid, 'Let us haſten back to our own countries, for we have loſt all opportunities of gaining any thing here.' It was ſoon known in Alexandria that the Armagnacs were in deſpair for the death of the count: they therefore made a ſally from the town, advancing full gallop to the camp, ſhouting 'Pavia for the lord of Milan!' Not one of the Armagnacs made any defence, but allowed themſelves to be ſlain, like wicked people as they were: the conqueſt was great, for the army were ſo caſt down, that they ſurrendered without ſtriking a blow, and, throwing down their arms, made for Alexandria, whither the Germans, and other ſoldiers in the pay of the lord of Milan, drove them like a herd of cattle.

This unexpected death of the count d'Armagnac happened very unlucky for himſelf and his army. Had he remained quiet but five days, ſir John Hawkwood would have arrived with five hundred horſe and one thouſand foot; and many valiant deeds would have been done by this knight and his men; but an end was now put to every thing by this loſs.

You may ſuppoſe the count de Vertus was in high ſpirits on hearing his enemies, whom he greatly dreaded, were killed, made priſoners or put to flight, and that the count d'Armagnac was dead. He more dearly prized his knight, ſir

James

James de la Berme, through whoſe prudence and valour this good fortune had befallen him. He appointed him commander in chief of his chivalry, and preſident of his council. The lord of Milan conſidered how he ſhould act towards the priſoners; and, as he was anxious to free his country of them, he behaved in the moſt courteous manner, giving to every gentleman a horſe, and to the infantry one florin each, beſides their liberty, free of ranſom; but he made them all take an oath that they would never more bear arms againſt him.

Thus did this army return defeated from Lombardy and Piedmont, to Savoy and Dauphiny; but they were in the utmoſt diſtreſs, for the incloſed towns refuſed them admittance, and the gates of all caſtles were ſhut againſt them. They had ſoon ſpent their florins, and it was neceſſary for them to work or ſtarve. Some ſhewed compaſſion, and gave them money; but others, on the contrary, laughed at and abuſed them, ſaying; 'Go, go ſeek your count d'Armagnac, who has burſt himſelf by drinking at a fountain near Alexandria.'

They were ſtill worſe off when they came to the rivers Rhône and Saone, which they thought to croſs without moleſtation; but it was otherwiſe, for the king had commanded all the bridges and fords to be guarded againſt them. They fell now into the greateſt poverty, and were never after able to unite together.

Thus was the armament of count John d'Armagnac deſtroyed, and his ſiſter remained in the ſame diſtreſsful ſtate as before. The lord of Milan ordered the body of the count d'Armagnac to be embalmed, put into a coffin, and eſcorted by a biſhop of his country and ſuch of his relations as had remained to his brother ſir Bernard d'Armagnac, who was much concerned at the melancholy event, but could not any way remedy it. The count d'Armagnac was buried in the cathedral church of Rodez, where he lies.

CHAP. XXV.

THE KING OF ENGLAND IS ANXIOUS TO MAKE A PEACE WITH FRANCE.—THE DUKE OF GLOUCESTER THROWS OBSTACLES IN THE WAY.—SIR PETER DE CRAON, FORMERLY THE FAVOURITE OF KING CHARLES AND HIS BROTHER THE DUKE OF TOURAINE, INCURS THEIR HATRED, AND TAKES REFUGE WITH THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

SIR Thomas Percy, as you have heard, was ſent by the king of England to propoſe a treaty of peace to the court of France, for king Richard was very deſirous to accompliſh it. Two of his uncles, the dukes of Lancaſter and York, were of his opinion; but his other uncle, Thomas of Woodſtock

Woodſtock, duke of Gloceſter, earl of Eſſex and Buckingham, and conſtable of England, would no way liſten to it; telling his friends ſecretly, that he would never agree to any peace with France, whatever negotiations might be taken in hand on the ſubject, if it were not an honourable one; that all the towns, caſtles and lordſhips which were yielded to England, but had ſince been fraudulently taken back muſt be reſtored, and the ſum of 1400,000 francs, which had remained unpaid by the French when they began the war, muſt alſo be paid down. He declared, that as long as he lived he ſhould never change theſe ſentiments; in which he was joined by many of the barons of England, particularly the earl of Arundel, who privately ſaid the duke of Gloceſter was in the right, though they diſſembled their opinions in public from ſeeing how much the king of England was bent upon peace.

The poorer knights and archers were of courſe for war, as their ſole livelihood depended upon it. When theſe things are conſidered, and the claims of the French, it will be very clear nothing like peace could be concluded. The French demanded to have Calais deſtroyed, and poſſeſſion given them of the lordſhips of Guines, Hames, Merle and Oye, with the lands of Fretin and the dependancies of Guines as far as the river that runs by Gravelines. True it is, the king of France and his commiſſioners were willing to give up to the king of England and his heirs as many lands in Aquitaine of equal or more value as to revenue

than thoſe they demanded; but the duke of Gloceſter made too firm an oppoſition to this article, ſaying,—'The French wiſh to pay us back with our own lands; for we have the charter of king John, ſealed by him and his children, which gives up to us the whole of Aquitaine in fee ſimple. Whatever they have taken from it ſince, has been a fraud and a robbery; and their whole attempt, night and day, is to deceive us. Should Calais and the lands they require be given up to them, they will be lords of the ſea and attack our coaſts. Never, therefore, ſo long as I live, will I conſent to peace with France on theſe terms.'

At the time I am now ſpeaking of, a knight of noble extraction, from Anjou and Brittany, was greatly in favour with the king of France, as well as with his brother the duke of Touraine. His name was ſir Peter de Craon, and of ſuch power that nothing was done but with his advice. He had been favourite of the late duke of Anjou, king of Sicily, and was immenſely rich, which had given riſe to many ſcandalous reports againſt him; for it was currently ſaid in France, that he had robbed the duke of Anjou. This cauſed him to avoid the preſence of the young king of Sicily and the queen his mother; but he had managed to acquire the affections of the king of France and the duke of Touraine.

The conſtable, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, was likewiſe in high favour with the king and his brother for the meritorious ſervices he had done them in arms, and his brilliant actions during the reign of the

the late king. Sir Oliver's daughter was married as you have heard, to John of Brittany, brother to the queen-dowager of Sicily; and this marriage had ſorely diſpleaſed the duke of Brittany, who mortally hated the conſtable, conſidering both him and John of Brittany as his ſecret enemies. He had often repented not having put the conſtable to death when he had him in his caſtle of Ermine.

Sir Peter de Craon was a favourite with the duke of Brittany, being alſo his couſin, and, during the reign of his power with the king of France and the duke of Touraine, would willingly, had he been able, have cauſed a quarrel between them and the conſtable. Thus envies and jealouſies, which have always underhand ruled in France, continue to act until they bring their favourites to an unfortunate end.

The conſtable of France had been ſo loyal in his whole conduct towards the crown, that he was beloved by all except the duke of Burgundy; and the hatred he bore him originated in the ducheſs, who was a lady of a high ſpirit, and too nearly related to the duke of Brittany to love the conſtable: beſides, ſhe continued the affection of her father to all whom he loved, and hated thoſe he had hated; ſuch was her temper. Sir Peter de Craon, who at this time reſided at the court of France with the duke of Touraine, kept up a frequent correſpondence with the duke of Brittany, they writing, in the moſt friendly manner

ner, to each other concerning the ſtate of their affairs.

I am unable to deſcribe the exact grounds of their correſpondence; but I, John Froiſſart, author of this hiſtory, during the time of my reſidence at Paris, (which was when ſir Peter de Craon made the daring attack, in the night-time, on the conſtable, who narrowly eſcaped death, as I ſhall relate), ſeeing public affairs likely to be much troubled and turn out unfortunate, made many and frequent inquiries why ſir Peter de Craon had ſo very ſuddenly loſt the affections and favour of the king and the duke of Touraine. I had ſo often demanded the cauſe from thoſe who ought to be acquainted with it, that at laſt I heard the truth of what was commonly believed to have occaſioned it. He was under the diſpleaſure of the duke of Touraine, for having revealed ſecrets intruſted to him by the duke to the ducheſs; and, if he did ſo, he behaved ſhamefully. The duke was ſo fond of ſir Peter de Craon that he made him his companion, dreſſed him in the ſame clothes as himſelf, and carried him wherever he went, intruſting him with all his moſt ſecret thoughts. The duke, at the time young and amorous, much amuſed himſelf with the company of ladies and damſels, and, as I heard, was particularly attached to a young friſky damſel of Paris. His intrigue was known and his ſecrets betrayed, to the great vexation of the duke, who could not accuſe any other of having done it but ſir Peter de Craon; for to him alone the duke had diſcovered it, and had led

led him with him when he viſited ſecretly this noble young lady.

The duke was much ſmitten with her, and had proffered her, if ſhe would conſent to his wiſhes, one thouſand golden crowns; but ſhe had refuſed them, ſaying, 'that her love for him was not on account of his riches, but that his affection had won hers; and that ſhe ſcorned to ſell her honour for gold,' The whole of this buſineſs was told the ducheſs, who ſent for the young lady to her chamber. On her entering, ſhe called her by her name, and, with much anger, ſaid, 'How is this? do you ſeek to wrong me with my lord?' The lady was thunderſtruck, and, with tears replied, 'Oh no, madam: pleaſe God, I never will nor even think of it.' 'It is not ſo,' ſaid the ducheſs; 'for, I am well informed, my lord and you love each other mutually; and the matter is ſo far advanced, that at ſuch a time and place he offered you a thouſand golden crowns to poſſeſs you. You refuſed them, for which you behaved well, and this time I forgive you; but I caution you, if you value your life, not to have any further converſation with my lord, but, through regard to me, ſend him a diſmiſſal.'

The young lady, finding herſelf juſtly accuſed and in ſome danger, replied; 'Madam, I will free myſelf from him as ſoon as poſſible, and henceforth ſo act that you ſhall never again hear any thing diſagreeable of me.' On this, the ducheſs permitted her to depart, and ſhe returned home. The duke, much in love, and ignorant of what had

had paſſed, went to the place where the lady reſided; but, on ſeeing him, ſhe fled, and acted contrary to her uſual manner, ſhewing diſlike rather than love; for ſhe was afraid to do otherwiſe, from the promiſes ſhe had made to the ducheſs. The duke, noticing ſuch a difference in his reception, was very melancholy, and would know the cauſe of it. The young lady, with tears, ſaid, 'My lord, you have revealed to the ducheſs the offer you once made me, or, if not yourſelf, ſome one has done it for you: recollect yourſelf, for you are diſcovered. Madame de Touraine told me of it herſelf, and frightened me exceedingly; but ſhe has this time forgiven me, on condition that I promiſed, on my oath, never again to give her cauſe for jealouſy, by any further converſation with you.'

The duke was much vexed at hearing this ſpeech, and ſaid; 'Fair lady, I ſwear, on my faith, that I would rather have loſt one hundred thouſand francs, than have betrayed you to the ducheſs. Since you have given her a promiſe on oath, keep it; but, coſt what it may, I will find out who has diſcovered our ſecrets.' He then went away, and, though he diſſembled his agitation, he did not think the leſs concerning the cauſe. In the evening, he came to the ducheſs's apartments and ſupped, ſhewing her more affection than he had hitherto done, inſomuch that, by fair ſpeeches and attentions, the ducheſs diſcovered the author of her information, concerning his intrigue, to be ſir Peter de Craon.

The

The duke took no further notice of the matter, and, having paſſed the night, on the morrow, at nine o'clock, mounted his horſe, and went from the hôtel de St. Pol to the Louvre. The king was going to hear maſs, and received his brother affectionately; but, perceiving from his manner that he was angered, he ſaid; 'Fair brother, what ails you? you ſeem much agitated.' 'My lord, if I am, I have good cauſe for it.' 'What is the matter?' ſaid the king: 'we wiſh to know it.' The duke, unwilling to hide his grief, told him, word for word, every thing that had paſſed, complaining bitterly of ſir Peter de Craon, and added; 'My lord, if it were not for the love I bear you, and for my own honour, I ſwear on the faith I owe you I would have him ſlain.' 'Do no ſuch thing,' ſaid the king: 'we will order him, by our ſpecial counſellors, to quit inſtantly our palace, for that we have no further need of his ſervices; and do you the ſame on your part.' 'That I intended,' replied the duke of Touraine, who was ſatisfied with what the king had ſaid.

This ſame day, ſir Peter de Craon was told by the lord de la Riviere and ſir John le Mercier, from the king, that he muſt no longer reſide in the palace, and inſtantly ſeek other lodgings. At the ſame time, ſir John de Bueil and lord d'Ervaux, ſénéſchal of Touraine, delivered him a ſimilar meſſage from the duke of Touraine. Sir Peter, ſeeing himſelf thus diſmiſſed, was much aſhamed and greatly angered: he could no way account for it, as the meſſengers had not declared to him the

the cauſe of his diſgrace. Being deſirous of admittance to the preſence of the duke, to learn from him how he had angered him, he was told, that neither the king nor the duke would hear any thing he had to ſay. When he found his diſgrace was reſolved on, he packed up all he wanted, and ſet out, much dejected, from Paris, for a caſtle of his in Anjou, called Sablé *. He remained there ſome time, but in very low ſpirits from being driven from the palaces of France Touraine and Sicily. He therefore determined, ſince their gates were ſhut againſt him, that he would retire to the duke of Brittany, and relate to him what had happened.

This he executed, and met the duke at Vannes, who received him kindly. He had already heard what had befallen him, and ſir Peter again told him every particular that had paſſed, and that he was baniſhed the court of France. The duke of Brittany, having heard his ſtory, replied; 'Good couſin, make yourſelf eaſy; it is the lord de Cliſſon who has brewed this miſchief for you.' From this ſpeech, a deadly hatred ſprung, and greatly increaſed, as you will hear in the courſe of this hiſtory. Sir Peter de Craon lived ſo long with the duke of Britanny, that he was forgotten in France; for the conſtable and the king's council never publicly mentioned his name. They did not like the

* The caſtles of Craon and Sablé are in Anjou, two leagues diſtant from la Fleche.

duke

duke of Brittany more for having invited and retained him; but the duke was indifferent to the king of France's anger or love, and provided all his towns and caſtles plentifully with ſtores and proviſion, plainly ſhewing he cared not whether it was war or peace between him and France.

Every thing he did was known to the king and his council; and thoſe moſt in the king's favour thought him preſumptuous, and menaced him for his conduct. The duke held their menaces cheap, and declared he would wage war on the count de Penthievre in earneſt, and on all his abettors, for he had juſt cauſe of quarrel. He ſaid; 'This count de Penthievre, our couſin, ſigns himſelf John of Brittany, as if he was our heir. We have no objection to his ſigning John, for that is his name, or count de Penthievre; but we are reſolved he ſhall lay down the ermines, and title himſelf John of Blois, or of Châtillon, and bear none other arms but thoſe: if he refuſe, we will force him to do it, and take from him his lands, which he holds in vaſſalage from us. With regard to the duchy of Brittany, he need not think of that, for we have a ſon and a daughter who are our heirs. Let him ſeek ſome other inheritance, for he will be diſappointed in ours.'

Such were the converſations of the duke with ſir Peter de Craon, who, far from contradicting any of his future plans, rather urged him on, from hatred to the conſtable and council of France.

We will now leave this ſubject, and ſpeak of a more

more melancholy one relative to the count Guy de Blois, whom I have before mentioned in this hiſtory as my great patron and maſter.

CHAP. XXVI.

THE DEATH OF THE YOUNG COUNT LOUIS DE CHASTILLON, SON TO COUNT GUY DE BLOIS.—THE SUDDEN DEATH OF GASTON COUNT DE FOIX.

I HAVE already ſpoken of the marriage that took place between Louis de Châtillon, ſon of the count de Blois, and the lady Mary, daughter of the duke of Berry. In the ſettlements of this marriage, the duke managed well for his daughter; for ſhe had a dower of ſix thouſand livres, French money (which are well worth the ſame ſum of francs, reckoning them as florins) aſſigned her on the county of Blois, ſo that, if ſhe ſurvived her huſband, the county of Blois would be obliged to pay her this ſum annually during her life. Now it fell out, that about Saint John Baptiſt's day, in the year of our Lord 1391, the boy whom I have called Louis de Blois, ſon to the count de Blois, left his father at the château des Moutils*, ſitu-

* Les Moutils,—a village in the Bleſois, dioceſe of Blois.

ated

ated in the county of Blois, and ſet out for Hainault to viſit his mother and wife. Not long after his arrival, he was ſeized with a fever, for he had rode very hard, and the weather was hot: he was alſo of a tender age, being no more than fourteen years old, and, in ſpite of the phyſicians, he died, for they could not check the fever. His parents, you may ſuppoſe, were much grieved for the loſs of their heir, as was the young lady of Berry: ſhe loved him moſt affectionately, and conſidered herſelf as nobly married. The count de Blois was uneaſy at the conſequences, for his affairs were rather in confuſion, and he knew the duke of Berry to be avaricious beyond meaſure, who, in order to graſp at the dower of his daughter, would take poſſeſſion of the county of Blois: he therefore waited the event in ſilence.

Thus were the two daughters, Bona and Mary, widowed in the ſame year. The eldeſt was married to Amadeus count of Savoy, who died very ſuddenly, and ſo much was ſaid on the ſubject that ſir Otho Grandſon was near being arreſted for the ſuſpicions that were laid to his charge, and forced to quit Savoy, France and Germany, to fix his reſidence in England.

In this year, died likewiſe ſuddenly, the noble and gallant count de Foix. I will ſay how it happened. True it is, that of all the pleaſures of this world he took moſt delight in the chace, and was always well provided with hounds of all ſorts, having never leſs than ſixteen hundred. The count de Foix was at this ſeaſon hunting in the foreſt of Sauveterre, on the road to Pampeluna in Na-

 varre,

varre, not far diſtant from Orthès in Béarn. The day he died, he had all the forenoon been hunting a bear, and it was late in the evening when he was taken and cut up. His attendants aſked where he pleaſed to have his dinner prepared: he ſaid, 'At the inn of Rion, where we will dine, and in the cool of the evening ride to Orthès.' His orders were obeyed. The count with his companions rode a foot's pace towards the village of Rion, and diſmounted at the inn. The count went to his chamber, which he found ready ſtrewed with ruſhes and green leaves: the walls were hung with boughs newly cut for perfume and coolneſs, as the weather was marvellouſly hot, even for the month of Auguſt. He had no ſooner entered this room, than he ſaid, 'Theſe greens are very agreeable to me, for the day has been deſperately hot.' When ſeated, he converſed with ſir Eſpain du Lyon on the dogs that had beſt hunted; during which converſation his baſtard-ſon ſir Evan, and ſir Peter Cabeſtan entered the apartment, as the table had been there ſpread. He called for water to waſh, and two ſquires advanced, Raymonet de Laſne and Raymonet de Copane: Ernaudon d'Eſpaign took the ſilver baſon, and another knight, called ſir Thibaut, the napkin. The count roſe from his ſeat, and ſtretched out his hands to waſh; but no ſooner had his fingers, that were handſome and long, touched the cold water, than he changed colour, from an oppreſſion at his heart, and, his legs failing him, fell back on his ſeat, exclaiming, 'I

am

am a dead man: Lord God, have mercy on me!'

He never ſpoke after this, though he did not immediately die, but ſuffered great pain. The knights preſent and his ſon were much terrified: they carried him gently in their arms to another chamber, and laid him on a bed, covering him well, thinking he was only chilled.

The two ſquires who had brought water to waſh in the baſon, ſaid, to free themſelves from any charge of having poiſoned him, 'Here is the water: we have already drank of it, and will now again in your preſence,' which they did, to the ſatisfaction of all.

They put into his mouth, bread, water, and ſpices, with other comforting things, but to no purpoſe; for in leſs than half an hour he was dead; having ſurrendered his ſoul very quietly. God, out of his grace, was merciful to him.

You may imagine all preſent were exceedingly afflicted at what had happened: they faſtened the door of the chamber, that his houſehold might not inſtantly be made acquainted with his death. The knights, ſeeing ſir Evan lamenting and wringing his hands, ſaid to him,—'Evan, the buſineſs is over: you have loſt your father and lord. We know that he loved you in preference to all others. Take care of yourſelf: mount your horſe, ride and gain poſſeſſion of the caſtle of Orthès, and the treaſure within it, before any one know of our lord's death.'

Sir Evan made them a low reverence, and re-

plied; 'Gentlemen, I return you many thanks for the friendſhip you now ſhew me: I truſt I ſhall not forget it; but tell me what are my lord's tokens, or I ſhall not gain admittance into the caſtle.' 'You ſay true,' anſwered the knights: 'take them.' This he did. The tokens were a ſmall golden ring the count wore on his finger, and a little knife with which he ſometimes cut his meat at table. Theſe were the tokens the porter of the caſtle at Orthès, was acquainted with, and had he not ſeen them he would never have opened the gate.

CHAP. XXVII.

SIR EVAN DE FOIX, BASTARD-SON TO THE LATE COUNT, INTENDING TO CARRY AWAY PRIVATELY THE TREASURE OF HIS FATHER, IS DISCOVERED BY THE TOWNSMEN OF ORTHES, WHO, HOWEVER, PROMISE EVERY ASSISTANCE TO HIM AND TO HIS BROTHER THAT IS NOT INCOMPATIBLE WITH THE TRUE HEIR TO THE COUNT DE FOIX, THE VISCOUNT DE CHASTELBON.

SIR Evan de Foix left the inn at Rion with only two ſervants, and rode in haſte to Orthès, where nothing was known of the count's death. He paſſed through the ſtreets without ſpeaking to any

any one, or his errand being ſuſpected, until he came to the caſtle, and called to the porter. The porter ſaid, 'What does my lord Evan want? Where is my lord?' 'He is at Rion,' anſwered the knight, 'and has ſent me to ſeek for ſome things that are in his chamber, and to return back to him. To convince you of what I ſay, look here, there are his tokens, his ring and knife.' The porter, having eyed them through a window, knew them well and opened the wicket, through which ſir Evan entered, and his ſervants led the horſes to the ſtable.

When ſir Evan had paſſed the gate, he told the porter to faſten it, which being done, he ſeized the keys, and ſaid to him, 'Thou art a dead man, if thou do not obey me.' The porter was frightened, and aſked the cauſe. 'My lord and father is dead,' ſaid the knight, 'and I wiſh to gain poſſeſſion of his treaſure before any one know of it.' The porter obeyed, as it was neceſſary for him to do; but he would indeed have preferred that ſir Evan ſhould have the treaſure to all other perſons. Sir Evan knew well enough where it was depoſited, in the great tower, but he had three pair of ſtrong doors to open, and with ſeparate keys, before he could gain admittance. Theſe keys he was unable for ſome time to find, as they were in a ſmall long box of fine ſteel, locked with a little ſteel key, which the count de Foix carried with him when he rode abroad; and it was found hanging to a piece of ſilk which he wore over his ſhirt. The knights, who were watching the body

of the count at Rion, noticing this key, could not imagine the uſe of it; but the chaplain of the count, ſir Nicholas de l'Eſcalle, being preſent, knew it well. He had been much loved by the count, who intruſted him with all his ſecrets, and, when he had viſited his treaſure, had never taken any one but his chaplain with him. On ſeeing the key, he ſaid; 'Sir Evan will loſe his pains, for without this key he can never enter the treaſury: this opens a ſmall ſteel caſket in which the other keys are.'

The knights were vexed at hearing this, and ſaid; 'Carry it to him, ſir Nicholas: you will act well by ſo doing, for it is better ſir Evan ſhould gain the treaſure than any other: he is a good knight, and our late lord loved him exceedingly.' The chaplain anſwered, 'Since you adviſe me, I will cheerfully do it,' and, inſtantly mounting his horſe, he haſtened with the key to the caſtle of Orthès, where ſir Evan was very melancholy at not finding the keys, and at the impoſſibility of forcing the locks of the doors, as they were very ſtrong, and he had not any inſtruments for the purpoſe. While he was in this diſtreſs, and ſir Nicholas on the road to aſſiſt him, it was known in Orthès (I know not whether by inſpiration, or from women and ſervants returning from Rion) that the count de Foix, their lord, was no more.

This was very afflicting news, for the count was greatly beloved by all ranks. The whole town was in motion, and met in the public ſquare, where

where they converſed together on the ſubject. Some who had noticed ſir Evan ride up the town, ſaid; 'We ſaw ſir Evan de Foix gallop towards the caſtle, and he ſeemed much diſtreſſed.' Others replied; 'Without doubt, what we have heard is true; for it is not uſual for him to ride without his father.'

As the men of Orthès were thus converſing and murmuring, the chaplain, ſir Nicholas, fell into their hands. They ſurrounded him to inquire the news, and ſaid; 'Sir Nicholas, how fares my lord? They tell us he is dead: is it true?' 'No' replied the chaplain: 'he is not dead, but moſt dangerouſly ill; and I am haſtening to ſeek for ſome things that may do him good, which I ſhall return with to him.' On ſaying this, he paſſed on to the caſtle. Having gained admittance, ſir Evan was rejoiced at his arrival, for without the ſmall key he could never have entered the tower.

I will ſay how the townſmen behaved. They began to ſuſpect the death of the count had been hid from them, and ſaid among themſelves; 'It is now night, and we hear nothing certain of our lord's health, from his officers or ſecretaries. Sir Evan and his chaplain, who was his confidential ſecretary, have entered the caſtle: let us guard that place this night, and to-morrow we ſhall have certain news. We will ſend privately to Rion to inquire how things are; for we know that the greater part of our lord's treaſure is in the caſtle, and if he be robbed or defrauded of any part of it, we ſhall be blamed. We muſt therefore be on our

guard concerning what paſſes.' 'That is true,' replied others, who thought the advice good.

They inſtantly ſurrounded the caſtle, and placed ſufficient guards at all the gates of the town, ſo that no one could enter or go out without permiſſion; and this ſtrict watch they continued until the morrow. The truth was now known of the count's death, and cauſed the greateſt tribulation among the inhabitants of all deſcriptions, for he was much beloved by his ſubjects. The guards were now doubled, and the principal townſmen drew up before the caſtle.

When ſir Evan de Foix ſaw, from the caſtle of Orthès, the manner in which the townſmen had drawn themſelves up, and that the death of the count was known to them, he ſaid to the chaplain, —'Sir Nicholas, I have failed in my attempt: I can never go hence without leave of the inhabitants, for they know my father is dead, and their numbers are every moment augmenting. I muſt humble myſelf to them, for force will be of no avail.' 'You ſay well,' replied the chaplain; 'you will gain more by civil words than harſh ones: go, and ſpeak to them, but act cautiouſly.'

Sir Evan went to a tower near the gate, which had a window looking over the bridge to the ſquare where the townſmen were aſſembled. It was in this tower the lady Jane of Boulogne was brought up and educated, until ſhe became ducheſs of Berry, as has been already noticed in this hiſtory.

Sir Evan opened the window of the tower, and called

called to him ſome of the principal inhabitants, who advanced on the bridge to hear what he had to ſay. He thus addreſſed them aloud,—'Good people of Orthès, I know but too well why you are thus aſſembled and ſorrowful: you have good cauſe for it. I therefore moſt earneſtly entreat, for the love you bore my late lord and father, that you will not be diſpleaſed nor angered, if I have haſtened to take poſſeſſion of this caſtle and what is contained within it, for I mean nothing but what is juſt. You know the great affection my lord and father had for me, and that he would willingly have made me his heir. It has happened, by the will of God, that he died without having completed any regulations for that effect, which has thrown me upon you, with whom I was brought up and educated, a poor knight, baſtard to the count de Foix. I therefore beg you would counſel me how to act, and aſſiſt me in this time of diſtreſs. I pray God that you will have compaſſion on me, as it will be an act of charity; an I ſhall open the caſtle for your free admittance, as I never thought of cloſing its gates againſt you.'

The chiefs among the townſmen anſwered,—'Sir Evan, you have well ſpoken, and to the purpoſe, and we are ſatisfied. We therefore ſay, that you ſhall live among us; and it is our intention that you keep this caſtle, and all that is within it, which we will aid you to defend. Should the viſcount de Châtelbon, your couſin, who is heir to the territory of Béarn, and the neareſt relation to our

our late lord, your father, claim any thing belonging to this caſtle, we will ſtrenuouſly defend you and your brother, ſir Gracien, in your rights. But we ſuppoſe, that when the king of France was laſt at Toulouſe, and our lord, your father, waited on him, ſome regulations were made reſpecting theſe matters; and your couſin, ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, ought to know all the circumſtances relative to them. We will write, to inform him of the death of our lord, and to invite him hither, to give us his advice, as well on the ſtate of Béarn and Foix, which may fall to ruin, as reſpecting the moveables and funeral of our lord. What we have now ſaid, we promiſe you moſt faithfully and loyally to obſerve.'

Sir Evan was well ſatisfied with this ſpeech, and threw open the gates of the caſtle for all to enter who pleaſed. Many did ſo, examined it well, and placed ſufficient guards to defend it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

THE CORPSE OF THE COUNT DE FOIX IS BROUGHT FROM RION TO ORTHES.—THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS THE BISHOP OF NOYON AND THE LORD DE LA RIVIERE INTO THE COUNTY OF FOIX, TO MAKE ARRANGEMENTS, ACCORDING TO THE DECREE OF THE COUNCIL.

THIS ſame day, the body of the count de Foix was put into a coffin, and brought to Orthès. The inhabitants, men, women and children, who went to meet it, wept moſt bitterly, remembering his valour, prudence and generoſity, and the happineſs they had enjoyed during the whole of his reign; for there was neither Engliſhman nor Frenchman who dared to anger him. They ſaid,—'Our neighbours will now make war on us who have hitherto lived in peace, and we ſhall inhabit a land of miſery and ſlavery. No one will now attend to or defend our rights. Ah, Gaſton! fair child, why didſt thou anger thy father? If thou hadſt remained to us, whoſe youth promiſed ſo much, we ſhould be comforted; but we loſt thee when too young, and thy father has lived too ſhort a time. He was but ſixty-three years old, and that is no great age for ſuch a handſome and healthy prince, and one who had every comfort about him. Ah, deſolated and comfortleſs Béarn! now thou haſt loſt thy prince, what will

will become of thee? Never ſhalt thou have an equal to the gallant and noble Gaſton.'

With ſuch lamentations was the body of the noble count carried through Orthès, attended by the following knights: firſt, the viſcount de Bruniguel and the lord de Copane, then ſir Roger d'Eſpaign and the lord de Laiſne, ſir Raymond de la Motte and the lord de Beſach, ſir Menaut de Noailles and ſir Richard de Saint George. Sir Evan de Foix walked in the rear, attended by the lord de Coraſſe, the lord de Barentin, the lord de Baruge, the lord de Quer, and upwards of ſixty knights of Béarn, who had haſtened to Rion on hearing the melancholy news of their lord's death.

The body of the count was borne, with his face uncovered, to the church of the Cordeliers in Orthès, where it was opened, embalmed, and put into a leaden coffin, and left in that ſtate until the day of its interment. It was handſomely watched; for there were continually burning around it, night and day, twenty-four large wax tapers, which were held by as many varlets: twenty-four being employed on this ſervice during the day, and the like number of others during the night.

The death of the count de Foix was now public in various places, and more were ſorry than rejoiced; for he had made, in his lifetime, innumerably valuable gifts, and was beloved by all who were acquainted with him. Even pope Clement ſhewed much concern on hearing it, notwithſtanding the difficulties the count had, for a long time,

time, thrown in the way of the marriage of his couſin, the lady Jane of Boulogne, now ducheſs of Berry.

The biſhop of Pamiers was at this time reſident at Avignon; for he was afraid of living in his dioceſe, from the hatred the count de Foix bore him. Although they were relations, and the count had made him a biſhop, he incurred the count's diſgrace, from his attempts to extend his juriſdiction, to the prejudice of the count. The pope ſent for him to the palace, and ſaid, 'Biſhop of Pamiers, your peace is made: the count de Foix is dead.' The biſhop was well pleaſed to hear it, and, in a few days, ſet out from Avignon, for his biſhoprick in the county of Foix.

When intelligence of the count's death was carried to the court of France, the king, his brother and the duke of Bourbon, were grieved thereat, for his many good qualities. The council addreſſed the king: 'Sire, the county of Foix is now yours by lawful ſucceſſion; for, ſince the count has died, without leaving any heirs by marriage, no one can diſpute your claim. This is underſtood by the landholders of Foix. There is alſo another circumſtance which adds to your claim, you have lent on mortgage of that county fifty thouſand francs, ſend and take poſſeſſion for payment, and hold it as your legal inheritance: thoſe of the county deſire nothing more eagerly than to be under your government. It is a fair poſſeſſion, and comes very opportunely, for it borders on Catalonia and Arragon; and if, in time

to

to come, you ſhould be at war with the king of Arragon, the county of Foix will be a good frontier; for it has many caſtles and forts which may be very advantageouſly garriſoned with men at arms.'

The king liſtened with pleaſure to this ſpeech, and, agreeing with his council, ſaid, 'See whom we ſhall ſend thither.' They reſolved on the lord de la Riviere, becauſe he had formerly been there, and determined that he ſhould be accompanied by the biſhop of Noyon. Theſe two lords, on hearing of their embaſſy, made very handſome preparations, but did not immediately ſet out. When they did, they travelled ſlowly and at their leiſure, taking the road through Avignon.

CHAP. XXIX.

THE VISCOUNT DE CHASTEL-BON, HEIR TO THE COUNT DE FOIX, ATTENDS HIS FUNERAL AT ORTHES.—HE IS ADVISED TO SEND TO THE BEFORE-NAMED COMMISSIONERS FROM FRANCE, TO DEMAND POSSESSION OF THE SUCCESSION WHICH HAD FALLEN TO HIM BY THE DEATH OF THE COUNT DE FOIX: HE AFTERWARDS SENDS, TO THE SAME PURPORT, TO THE KING OF FRANCE.

THE death of the count de Foix was ſignified to the viſcount de Châtel-bon in Arragon. He inſtantly ſet out for Béarn, and arrived at Orthès;

Orthès; but, though the inhabitants made him very welcome, they did not acknowledge him for their lord. They ſaid, 'they were but a part of the country; and that it would be neceſſary for all the barons, prelates, and citizens of the principal towns to aſſemble and conſider of the buſineſs; that Béarn was an independent territory, and thoſe lords who reſided in it would never conſent that it ſhould pay homage to any one.'

It was now determined to perform the obſequies of the count de Foix, and then to ſummon all the barons of Béarn and Foix; that all who pleaſed might attend and deliberate how to act, on the preſent occaſion, in the choice of a lord. The barons, prelates and chief citizens of Béarn and Foix were invited to the funeral of the count. Thoſe from Béarn came; but the Foixiens refuſed, ſaying they ſhould ſtay at home to guard and defend their country until the matter of ſucceſſion were determined, for they had heard the king of France laid claim to it. The biſhop of Pamiers, notwithſtanding this, being a relation and invited, went to Orthès in handſome ſtate, becoming his rank.

Great were the numbers who attended the funeral of Gaſton count de Foix, the laſt of the name, in the church of the cordelier friars of Orthès, on a Monday, the 12th day of October, in the year of our Lord 1391. In addition to the barons and knights, there were three biſhops: firſt the biſhop of Pamiers, who ſaid maſs and performed

formed the ſervice; then the biſhops of Leſcar and Oléron. The church was ſplendidly illuminated, and, during maſs, four knights diſplayed, in front of the altar, the emblazoned banners of Foix and Béarn. The firſt was ſupported by ſir Raymond de Châtelneuf, the ſecond by ſir Eſpaign du Lyon, the third by ſir Peter de Quer, and the fourth by ſir Menaut de Noailles.

Sir Roger d'Eſpaign made the offering of his ſword, ſupported by the bourg de Copane* and ſir Peter Andrew de Béarn, governor of Lourde. The viſcount de Bruniquel offered the ſhield, ſupported by ſir John de Châtelneuf and John de Chantiron. The helmet was offered by the lord Valentin de Béarn, ſupported by ſir Arnold de Roſtem, and Arnold de Sainte Colombe. The war-horſe was offered by the lord de Coraſſe, ſupported by ſir Arnauton d'Eſpaign and Raymonnet de Copane.

Every part of the obſequies was moſt honourably and magnificently performed according to the cuſtom of the country. Sir Evan and ſir Gracien de Foix, the two baſtard-ſons of the count, were preſent, as were the viſcount de Châtelbon, all the barons from Béarn, and ſome from Foix; but the laſt, as ſoon as the ſervice was ended, mounted their horſes, and went to dine at Heritiel, two leagues diſtant from Orthès.

* The family of Copane is known at this day under the name of Caupenne. The caſtle of Caupenne is near Bayonne. —*Note by the marquis de Sy.*

Very

Very early on the morrow, the biſhop of Pamiers took his departure, refuſing to aſſiſt at the aſſembly of the barons of Béarn, which was fixed for that day. As ſoon as the obſequies had been performed, the body of the count de Foix was taken from the leaden coffin, enwrapped with a new and handſome waxed cloth, and buried in front of the grand altar, in the choir of the church of the Cordeliers. Of him there is an end: God pardon his ſins!

I will now ſay what was done at this great meeting of prelates, barons, knights and principal citizens of Béarn, at Orthès. I imagine, from the information I received, the viſcount de Châteaubon was addreſſed nearly as follows: 'My lord, we know well that, from your relationſhip to our late much honoured lord, whoſe ſoul God pardon! you are entitled to ſucceed to all his inheritances, as well in Béarn as in Foix; but at this moment we dare not acknowledge you as our lord, leſt we be guilty of great imprudence, and hazard this country of Béarn in a dangerous war; for we have heard that the king of France, who is our good neighbour, and very powerful, has ordered hither ſome of his council: we know not, nor ſhall we learn until they arrive and tell us, on what cauſe they are ſent. You are not ignorant, any more than ourſelves, that our late lord, whom God forgive! was laſt year with the king of France at Toulouſe, when they had many ſecret conferences; and the object of theſe muſt be explained, for, ſhould he have ſigned and ſealed any transfer of

Foix and Béarn, the king of France will think himſelf juſtified to poſſeſs them by force. We therefore muſt know the terms of ſuch treaties, if they exiſt, for we are otherwiſe ſituated than Foix. Ours is a free country, which owes neither homage nor ſervitude to any one; whereas the county of Foix is a tenure from the king of France, and the Foixiens are ſo attached to France, that they will cheerfully acknowledge that king for its lord: indeed, they already ſay, that ſince the count de Foix has deceaſed without heir-male by legal marriage, that county naturally falls to the king of France, its lord paramount. My lord, you know we ſhall maintain our rights, and that we will not ſurrender them to any lord, whether the king of France or you. We recommend, therefore, that in this buſineſs you take the lead, by treaty or otherwiſe.'

The viſcount replied,—'And how would you adviſe me to act? for I have declared my willingneſs to follow every thing in reaſon that you ſhall counſel me.' 'My lord,' ſaid they, 'we think you ſhould deſire your couſin ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, who is here preſent, to accompany you at your expenſe to the county of Foix, to negotiate with the barons, prelates and principal inhabitants. If you ſucceed in prevailing on them to accept you for lord, or to keep ſecret their intentions until you ſhall have gained over the king of France by means of a compoſition in money, that the inheritance may be yours, you will have done well. Have an interview with the commiſſioners ſent by the king of France to Foix, and offer one or even

two

two hundred thouſand francs, you will find it cheaply bought, and have more than enough to pay it from the treaſure our late lord (whoſe ſoul may God pardon!) has left behind him. But we are reſolved that his two baſtard-ſons ſhall have a handſome ſhare of his landed property, and of the ready money.'

The viſcount de Château-bon anſwered,—'Gentlemen, I conſent to all your wiſhes. Here is ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, and in your preſence I entreat that he will accompany me on this journey.' Sir Roger ſaid, he would cheerfully do ſo, as he might mediate between them; but if the king of France, his ſovereign lord, or his commiſſioners, ſhould require him to be of their party, or wiſh him to retire, he ſhould then return. The viſcount was ſatisfied with this anſwer, and ſaid,—'I will never act, couſin, but by your advice; and, when you are by my ſide, I ſhall be more encouraged and the ſooner accompliſh my ends.' On this, the meeting was on the point of being diſſolved, when the viſcount requeſted that he might have, by way of loan, five or ſix thouſand francs from the treaſury, to carry on his affairs. The two baſtards likewiſe put in their claims, and deſired they might have a ſhare of the money of their father which the men of Orthès had now under their guard.

The barons, prelates and citizens, having conſidered theſe demands, agreed that the viſcount ſhould have five thouſand francs, on the terms he had propoſed, and the two baſtards of Foix two thouſand. Orders were accordingly given for their

delivery. This was complied with, and the treaſurers ſummoned to pay it. Not one perſon who had any office under the late count was diſmiſſed; but the guard of the caſtle of Orthès, and all within it, was given to the inhabitants of the town.

The viſcount de Château-bon, on his arrival at Orthès, ſet at liberty all priſoners confined in the caſtle. They were very numerous; for the count de Foix was very cruel to any perſon who incurred his indignation, never ſparing them, however high their rank, but ordering them to be thrown over the walls, or confined on bread and water during his pleaſure; and ſuch as ventured to ſpeak for their deliverance ran riſks of ſimilar treatment. It is a well-known fact, that he confined, in a deep dungeon, his couſin-german, this viſcount de Château-bon, during eight days; and he would not give him his liberty until he had paid down forty thouſand francs. Since that time, he bore him ſuch a hatred, that he dared not appear before him; and, had the count lived two years longer, the viſcount de Château-bon would never have inherited his poſſeſſions in Foix and Béarn.

Thoſe who had attended this meeting at Orthès now ſeparated, to return to their homes, leaving the viſcount to the care of his own affairs. He was not idle, but collected about his perſon thoſe knights and ſquires he thought attached to him, and left Orthès with an attendance of two hundred horſe. He went to Morlaas, a good town and well incloſed: it is the laſt in Béarn, on the

ſide

ſide of Bigorre, four leagues from Pau, and ſix from Tarbes.

On the morrow, as he was preparing to ſet out for Saint Gaudens, another good town at the entrance of Foix, on the Garonne, news was brought him that the biſhop of Noyon and ſir Bureau de la Riviere were arrived in great ſtate at Toulouſe. The viſcount de Château-bon aſked ſir Roger d'Eſpaign how he ſhould act. Sir Roger replied, —'Since we have now heard of them, we will remain and obſerve how they proceed. In a few days, they will make us acquainted with their intentions.'

This advice of ſir Roger was followed: indeed it would have been uſeleſs to have advanced further into Foix, for all the chief towns, caſtles, and paſſes over the river Garonne, were ſhut againſt them, ſuch as Palaminich, Caſtres, Monteſquieu, Carthas, Ortingas, Soſſa, the city of Pamiers, the caſtle of which was under the guard of the townſmen, Savredun, Montant, Mazeres, Veſpuis, and all the caſtles on the frontier of Arragon. The inhabitants of Foix declared that no foreign power, of men at arms, ſhould enter their country, until the right of ſucceſſion was eſtabliſhed: they, however, ſhewed a great inclination that France ſhould have their country, and that it ſhould be governed by a ſénéſchal, like Toulouſe, Carcaſſone and Beaucaire; but it happened otherwiſe, as I ſhall ſhortly relate.

When the commiſſioners from France arrived at Toulouſe, they ſought intelligence from the arch-

biſhop, the ſénéſchals of Foix and Toulouſe, who told them enough; for the two laſt had, from the great love they bore the late count de Foix, with many of the principal perſons in Toulouſe, attended his funeral at Orthès. They had, when there, inquired into the ſtate and diſpoſition of the country, from ſuch as they imagined could inform them. Upon hearing their report, the biſhop of Noyon and lord de la Riviere conſulted together, and determined to ſend for ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, for he was liege man to the king of France, his officer, and ſénéſchal of Carcaſſone, and keep him with them ſhould there be occaſion. According to this plan, they ſent off an honourable ſquire, with letters ſealed to ſir Roger. He left Toulouſe, thinking to meet ſir Roger at Montréal or at Saint Gaudens, with the viſcount de Château-bon; for he had heard they had left Morlaas on their road to enter Foix.

The ſquire followed the road to Saint Gaudens, and ſoon arrived there, as the diſtance was not more than twelve leagues. He preſented the letters to ſir Roger, telling him at the ſame time from whom they came. Sir Roger, having read them, ſaid,—'You will ſtay here to-day: to-morrow you ſhall return, and I hope have company with you.' The ſquire aſſented to this.

The viſcount and ſir Roger had a long conference on the ſubject of theſe letters, and it was concluded that ſir Roger ſhould wait on the commiſſioners at Toulouſe, when he would hear what was the object of their coming, and what their intentions.

tions. On the morrow, the knight, in company with the ſquire who had brought the letters, ſet out for Toulouſe, and they continued their journey until they arrived there in the evening, when ſir Roger retired to his lodgings, and the ſquire to his maſters. On learning that the knight was arrived, the commiſſioners ſaid, 'Since ſir Roger d'Eſpaign is come in perſon, to-morrow we ſhall have ſome intelligence.' The next day, after maſs, ſir Roger waited on the biſhop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere, who kindly received him. After ſome converſation on different ſubjects, they told him the cauſe of their coming, and ſhewed the king's procuration, for them to take poſſeſſion, in his name, of the county of Foix. Sir Roger obſerved their papers and credential letters were properly drawn up, and, after a ſhort pauſe, he replied; 'My lord of Noyon, and you my lord de la Riviere, I am not ſuch an intimate counſellor of the king as ye are, for, if I were, I would (under your favour) adviſe him to take the money, and indeed ſomewhat more than what he has, on mortgage on this county, advanced to the late count, and to be repaid on his death, and let the natural heir ſucceed to his inheritances. This would be, in my mind, greatly to his honour and profit, and to the ſalvation of his ſoul. I will give you other ſubſtantial reaſons why this ſhould be done, if you will liſten to me. Firſt, it is well known that this mortgage was fraudulently made by the late count, for he abounded in money; and was in this matter actuated ſolely by his hatred to the true heir, the viſcount de Châ-

teau-bon, whom he thought he could never ſufficiently injure. The king may therefore, if he conſent to it, be implicated in this diſgraceful tranſaction. Secondly, by following my advice, the king will be a gainer; for the county of Foix will coſt him full as much to guard and defend as his receivers can collect from it, and he will, beſide, loſe the homage and ſervice of a powerful man. Thirdly, he will heavily load his conſcience by thus diſinheriting another; for if he had meant to act juſtly in ſuch a bargain and ſale, he ought to have called upon all the relations of the late count, who had the remoteſt claims on his ſucceſſion, to oppoſe this act, if they ſhould have thought it neceſſary, which was not done. Conſider, therefore, my lords, you who have ſo good underſtandings, and are come hither as thoſe moſt looked up to in the king's council, all that I have ſaid, before you approve yourſelves abettors of frauds, which muſt affect the conſcience of the king, for on you will the whole blame be thrown, and, before it be too late, apply a remedy. You have now time, for my couſin, the viſcount de Château-bon, has ſent me to remonſtrate with you on this buſineſs; and he, as well as myſelf, beg you will pay attention to our complaints; for it is not juſt to ſeize all that ſtrength and power may enable you to do.'

When ſir Roger had done ſpeaking, the biſhop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere looked at each other; and the biſhop thus replied,—'Sir Roger, we are convinced the propoſition you have made

made us is cauſed by your love of juſtice; but our commiſſion does not extend to annihilate the bargains which may have been made between the king of France and the count de Foix. However, from conſideration and love to you, and for the ſatisfaction of all parties, we will not proceed further in the buſineſs, if you will undertake a journey to Paris, and make to the king and council what remonſtrances you may pleaſe relative to it. If you can by your eloquence prevail, that the ſucceſſion of Foix devolve to the viſcount de Château-bon, who is indeed, as you ſay, the legal heir, we ſhall be right glad, for we are no way inclined to diſinherit him.' 'My lords,' replied ſir Roger, 'you make me very happy by what you ſay: remain, therefore, and amuſe yourſelves in Toulouſe during my abſence, for all your expenſes ſhall be defrayed from the treaſure in the caſtle of Orthès.'

Thus did ſir Roger d'Eſpaign manage the matter, during his ſtay of two days in Toulouſe with the commiſſioners from France: a better negotiator could not have been ſent. On the third morning, when taking leave of them, he ſaid,—'My lords, ſince I have begun this buſineſs, I ſee the neceſſity for my going to Paris, to bring it to a concluſion, but I know not in what diſpoſition I ſhall find the king and his court. Should I ſtay longer than I propoſe, I beg you will not be uneaſy, for it will be the fault of thoſe with whom I muſt treat, if I do not very ſpeedily return: in

in the mean time, you ſhall conſtantly receive meſſengers with letters from me.'

'Go, in God's name,' ſaid the two lords: 'we know it will not be your fault if any delay happen.' Thus ſatisfied with each other, they ſeparated. The commiſſioners remained at Toulouſe, and ſir Roger returned to the viſcount de Château-bon at St. Gaudens, to tell him what had paſſed. The viſcount was rejoiced on hearing it, and ſaid,—'Sir Roger, my fair couſin, I put my whole confidence in you, and the matter intereſts me greatly; for it is nothing leſs than whether I am or am not to have the property of my family, from whom I am ſprung, and whoſe arms I bear, I have none other but you to ſend to France, nor any one on whom I can depend, to lay before the king and council the hardſhip of my caſe, with a force of eloquence equal to the occaſion. I therefore entreat, from your affection to me, and for the obligation I ſhall ever be under to you, that you would undertake this journey.'

Sir Roger ſaid,—'I knew well that you would charge me with this buſineſs, and, from my love to you and our relationſhip, I will readily undertake it.' He was not long in making his preparations to go to Paris, and took the road through Rodez, as being the ſhorteſt, for there was now a truce between France and England. Had it not been ſo, this way would not have been the moſt expedient; for there were many forts on the borders of Quercy, Rouergue and Limouſin, in the hands of the Engliſh.

We

We will now leave ſir Roger to purſue his journey, and ſpeak of the king of France and the duke of Brittany.

CHAP. XXX.

THE KING OF FRANCE AND THE DUKE OF BRITTANY MEET AT TOURS, TO SETTLE THEIR DIFFERENCES.—AMBASSADORS FROM ENGLAND COME THITHER ALSO TO NEGOTIATE A PEACE.

THE great hatred which ſubſiſted between the duke of Brittany and ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, conſtable of France, has been repeatedly mentioned in this hiſtory. The duke, in addition to the ill will he bore him, was envious of the favour he was in with the king of France, and the opinion he had of his advice: he would willingly have prevented or troubled this, if he had the power, and was not fearful of offending the king. This made him frequently repent that he had not put him to death when in his caſtle of Ermine, for no one would have revenged it, and the matter would ſoon have been forgotten.

The duke, on account of this hatred and envy of the conſtable, was very backward in his duties to the crown of France, and, when he could, abſolutely refuſed paying them. He knew he was acting

acting improperly, but perſiſted in this conduct, for he was too much inclined to England, and provided his caſtles and towns with artillery and ſtores, ſending ſecretly to England for men at arms and archers, whom he placed in his forts, giving it out that he was expecting war to be made on him, but his ſubjects could not gueſs from what quarter.

News of all that he was doing was carried to the court of France, and ſeveral ſpoke loudly againſt him. The duke, indeed, knew, that many of the French lords diſliked him; but he was indifferent as to this, and continued to act as before, entruſting only the ducheſs of Burgundy with the real ſtate of his affairs and his intentions. He was right ſo to do, for he was by her ſtrongly ſupported. She had a great affection for the duke of Brittany, not only becauſe he was her relation, but her father, the late earl of Flanders, had been much attached to him, and comforted him in all his diſtreſſes.

This ducheſs of Burgundy was a determined lady, and the duke, her huſband, would not willingly have angered her, as was indeed natural; for he had gained by his marriage with her immenſe poſſeſſions, and was the father of many fine children, which bound him, as well as the whole royal family, the more to her.

Theſe hatreds and jealouſies were daily increaſing; and although the duke of Brittany went to Paris, and paid his homage to the king, I will not

not pretend to ſay that it was done from the heart, for on his return to Brittany, very little change was obſerved in his conduct. He had alſo ſworn obedience to the pope of Avignon, but acted contrary to his ſolemn pledge, for he diſclaimed him by words, and would not allow his bulls to have effect in his duchy. He was neuter between the two popes in many things, and diſpoſed of vacant benefices according to his pleaſure; ſo that no foreign clerk, unleſs he was perfectly agreeable to the duke, could obtain any benefice in Brittany. And with regard to any writs, or law proceſſes, which were ſent thither from the parliament of Paris, he held them very cheap, and ſeemed to expect that his own officers ſhould take the precedence in all ſuch proceedings.

The duke deprived even the prelates of Brittany of many of their rights, who, though they made loud complaints of this to the parliament of Paris, could not obtain redreſs; for when the duke was ſummoned to defend himſelf againſt theſe charges in the courts of juſtice, he never came nor ſent any perſons ſufficiently authoriſed to anſwer for him. When, by order of the parliament, the king's officers were ſent into Brittany to ſerve the duke with writs of ſummons, they never could ſpeak with nor obtain a ſight of him, from different excuſes he made; but, when they had left his country and were returned to Paris, he ſaid,—'Yes, to be ſure I will go to Paris to hear law! never will I do ſuch a thing. Three years ago, I

was

was there for that purpoſe and to obtain juſtice; but the laſt I never could get. Our judges of the parliament turn it as they pleaſe; and they muſt think me very young and ignorant when they want thus to manage me. I wiſh to let them know, that if all my ſubjects were unanimous in the ſame opinions with me, I would find the kingdom of France ſo much employment that the moſt obſtinate ſhould liſten to reaſon. All who had loyally and faithfully ſerved ſhould be rewarded accordingly, and ſuch as had acted on oppoſite principles ſhould be puniſhed; and thoſe who demanded juſtice ſhould have it.'

Such ſpeeches, which were often repeated, were carried to the French court; and the king's moſt confidential miniſters ſaid, 'This duke of Brittany is ſo preſumptuous and obſtinate in his opinions that, if he be ſuffered to go on with ſuch diſcourſes, the kingdom will be weakened, by other lords following his example, and the rights of the crown by degrees may be loſt.' It was therefore reſolved, to obviate all difficulties, that the duke of Brittany ſhould be civilly invited to come to Tours, where the king of France, from the affection he bore him, would endeavour to give him the meeting, attended only by the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, and the biſhops of Chartres and Autun, members of his council, who were expreſsly named, as more in favour with the duke of Brittany than any other lords in France, except the lord de Coucy and the lord d'Eſtampes.

This

This plan being followed, the count d'Eſtampes and ſir Yves d'Orient were ſent into Brittany, where they had much difficulty to perſuade the duke to meet the king of France and his uncles at Tours. They diſcuſſed the matter ſo ably, he at length ſaid, 'that he would go to Tours; but they need not preſs him to prolong his journey, for further he would not go, neither would he ſee his enemy, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, as he hated him mortally.' Theſe terms were complied with before he would conſent to ſet out for Tours.

The two envoys returned to France to tell the king and his uncles their ſucceſs with the duke of Brittany. They appeared ſatisfied therewith, ſince they could not do better. The king and his lords began to make preparations for this journey to Tours on a large ſcale; for they imagined they ſhould remain there two or three months, as the treaties and negotiations which were to be propoſed would require much time before they could be concluded.

The king of France, the duke of Touraine, the duke of Berry, the duke of Burgundy, his ſon John of Burgundy, the duke of Bourbon, the lord de Coucy, the count de la Marche, the count de Saint Pol, and the whole of their councils came to Tours, where lodgings had been provided for them. The conſtable of France and his ſon-in-law, John of Brittany, came thither from a different quarter, as indeed they were nearly concerned in the matters then going forward.

The

The duke of Brittany, after keeping them waiting a fortnight, at laſt arrived. Some ſaid, that notwithſtanding he had made them come there, he would not meet them; for he had ſent twice or thrice to ſay he was too ill to ride; but, having conſidered the buſineſs, he at length came. His purveyances were grand, and he and his people were lodged at their eaſe.

[The negotiations inſtantly began on both ſides; but as the days were now ſhort, it being the winter ſeaſon, there could not be any long diſcuſſions before dinner, which were renewed afterward until the evening. During the time theſe treaties were going forward at Tours, between the king of France and the duke of Brittany, which laſted good part of the winter, ſir Roger d'Eſpaign and ſir d'Eſpaign du Lyon arrived there from Toulouſe on a Wedneſday, The city was ſo full of lords and other company, that it was with much difficulty they could find lodgings. Having at laſt obtained them, they waited on the king and his miniſters, and explained, as eloquently as they were able, the cauſe of their coming, and the caſe of the viſcount de Châteaubon, in regard to his claims on the county of Foix, and the honour of Béarn.] The king and his council were ſo fully occupied with the affairs of Brittany, which touched them more nearly, that they could not attend to other buſineſs.

Sir Roger d'Eſpaign was however well heard, though he had not a ſpeedy anſwer: he remained there

there upwards of two months, and was daily told his propoſal ſhould be conſidered, but the anſwer was not given. There was another cauſe of delay, during the king's reſidence at Tours, that increaſed the labours of his council; for ſir John Clanvow, counſellor and chamberlain to the king of England, and Richard Rowhall, clerk, doctor of laws, and of the council of England, arrived there from king Richard, on the ſubject of a peace which had been firſt propoſed by ſir Thomas Percy and the lord de Clifford, ſome time before at Paris, as you have heard.

On their arrival, all other buſineſs was laid aſide, and they alone were attended to. It was told me, they had brought credential letters to the king, and the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who heard what they had to ſay. Their miſſion was to know if the king of France and his council were willing to hold conferences at Amiens, as had been propoſed, to endeavour to eſtabliſh a laſting peace between the two kingdoms and their allies.

The king of France, who, from every appearance, ſeemed deſirous of peace, anſwered in the affirmative, and ſaid, 'that as ſoon as the buſineſs between him and the duke of Brittany was finiſhed, and he was returned from Tours, he would not attend to any thing until he arrived at Amiens, according to the former propoſitions, and that he would wait there the arrival of the commiſſioners from England, who ſhould be made welcome with the beſt cheer of the country.'

The Engliſh were well pleaſed with this anſwer, and ſtaid five days at Tours, paſſing their time with the king, the chief lords and the chancellor of France. Having accompliſhed the object of their coming, they took leave of the king and court. The king made them handſome preſents, for which they returned thanks, and had all their expenſes, while at Tours, paid.

During their ſtay, they neither ſaw nor ſpoke with the duke of Brittany, for they were anxious to avoid giving the French any cauſe of ſuſpicion of underhand dealing. They returned through Paris and Picardy to Calais, and, having a favourable paſſage, arrived at Dover, and thence journeyed to London, where they found the king and council aſſembled at Weſtminſter, and related to them the anſwer they had received, and what obſervations they had made. The king and council were ſatisfied with what they heard, and gave orders reſpecting the conferences to be holden at Amiens.

We will now return to the ambaſſadors from Béarn and Foix.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

SIR ROGER D'ESPAIGN AND SIR ESPAIGN DU LYON, AMBASSADORS FROM THE VISCOUNT DE CHASTELBON, PRACTISE SO SUCCESSFULLY WITH THE COURT OF FRANCE, THAT HE IS DECLARED HEIR AND SUCCESSOR TO THE COUNT DE FOIX BY LETTERS PATENT FROM THE KING OF FRANCE.

SIR Roger d'Eſpaign and ſir Eſpaign du Lyon acquitted themſelves handſomely and ſucceſsfully, in regard to the affairs of the viſcount de Châteaubon. They had many difficulties to overcome with the king and the court, more eſpecially with the members of the privy council, who had adviſed the king to annex the county of Foix to the crown of France, ſince the inhabitants were deſirous of it. The king was likewiſe of this opinion, but the duke of Burgundy more wiſely oppoſed it, and recommended it to the king to do nothing more than receive back the money he had advanced, ſaying, 'he had lands enough to guard without adding theſe, and diſinheriting the lawful heir.'

I believe the duke of Burgundy's advice would not have been attended to, if the duke of Berry had not taken up the matter. You have heard that formerly he had ſent to the count de Foix the count de Sancerre, the viſcount d'Aſſy, ſir William

liam de la Trimouille and the lord de la Riviere, to treat for his marriage with the lady Jane of Boulogne, whom the count de Foix had in ward.

The count liſtened to the propoſals, but told the envoys that the duke of Berry ſhould never have her for his wife if he did not give him thirty thouſand francs for the expenſes of her education, and this demand the duke paid, for he was determined to have the lady. This he had not forgotten, and, ſending for ſir Roger d'Eſpaign and ſir Eſpaign du Lyon to his chamber at Tours, ſhut the door, and converſed with them in private, ſaying; 'You may, if you pleaſe, ſucceed in the object of your journey hither; but you muſt firſt promiſe me, that I ſhall be fully repaid the ſum my treaſurer gave the count de Foix when I was married to my preſent ducheſs. I have always determined, that if I ſurvived the count, this money ſhould be paid me back.'

The two knights, hearing the duke thus talk, looked at each other, but ſaid not a word. The duke added,—'My fair ſirs, it was for this I wiſhed to ſpeak with you by ourſelves: conſult together on what I have told you; for, be aſſured, whether you conſent or not, I will obtain re-payment, and your treaty ſhall not ſucceed. I can depend on my good brother of Burgundy acting as I pleaſe: he is lieutenant over all the countries of Oil, as I am over thoſe of Oc, and none will dare to controvert my orders, or oppoſe my will. This viſcount de Châteaubon will find money enough for my demand, ſince the late count has left

left more behind him than the king has in his treasury.'

Sir Roger d'Eſpaign now anſwered,—'My lord, ſuppoſe we were to accede to your propoſal, we have not any money with us.' 'Oh,' replied the duke, 'ſir Roger, that ſhall be no hindrance. You ſhall take the debt on yourſelf, and give me your bond for it: I have that opinion of your honour I will credit you for this, or a much larger ſum if it were neceſſary.' 'My lord,' ſaid ſir Roger, 'I thank you: we will conſult together, and you ſhall to-morrow have our anſwer.' 'I am ſatisfied,' anſwered the duke; when the converſation ended, and the doors were opened.

The two knights returned to their lodgings, and had many converſations, whether or not they ſhould agree to the duke's demand, and accept of his mediation. Every thing conſidered, they thought the beſt they could do would be to conſent: for the matter had been drawn out to a great length without any appearance of being decided; but on condition that all the landed property was yielded to the viſcount de Châteaubon. On the morrow, they returned to the duke of Berry, and engaged themſelves for the payment of thirty thouſand francs, on condition he would influence the king and council to allow the viſcount de Châteaubon to inherit Foix, on his paying back the ſum it had been mortgaged for. The duke replied,—'Leave that to me: I will have it done, otherwiſe I ſhall not expect you to fulfil your engagements.'

From that day forward, the duke of Berry was ſo anxious to receive his thirty thouſand francs, and ſo able an advocate for the viſcount de Châteaubon, that every thing was arranged according to his wiſhes. The king and council deſiſted from their firſt demands; and the two foreign knights had given them letters of confirmation of the county of Foix to the viſcount de Châteaubon, addreſſed to the biſhop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere, who had remained at Toulouſe.

The ſubſtance of theſe letters, as I learnt from credible perſons who had been on this embaſſy, was as follows:—'We Charles, by the grace of God, king of France, order and command our reverend father in God the biſhop of Noyon, and our knight and chamberlain the lord de la Riviere, to allow the viſcount de Châteaubon, heir of Foix and Béarn, to have peaceable poſſeſſion and enjoyment of the ſame, and of all dependancies thereto belonging, on condition that he firſt pay into your hands the ſum of ſixty thouſand francs, which you will receive in one payment in the city of Toulouſe; and we will, after payment made, that the receipt, ſealed by our ſénéchal of Toulouſe, to the viſcount de Châteaubon, ſhall be a full and legal acquittance to him, and to whomever elſe it may concern. In addition, we expect payment of twenty thouſand francs, for the expenſes you have been at in your journeys to and from the county of Foix on this occaſion: you will for this money give acquittances from our above-named office in Toulouſe: ſaving and reſerving

ſerving that ſir Evan and ſir Gracien de Foix, baſtard-ſons of the late Gaſton count de Foix, of happy memory, have a reaſonable ſhare of the moveable property and inheritances of their deceaſed father, according to the diſcretion and advice of ſir Roger d'Eſpaign, the viſcount de Bruniquel, ſir Raymond de Châteauneuf and the lord de Coraſſe, to whom we will write, that they acquit themſelves in the matter honourably to the diſcharge of our conſcience; for, ſome time ſince, we made ſuch promiſe to their father. And ſhould any demur ariſe, either on the part of the four knights to whom we have entruſted this buſineſs, or from obſtinacy and rebellion on the part of the viſcount de Châteaubon, we annul and declare all treaties we may have entered into void, and of no effect. In teſtimony whereof, we have given theſe letters under our ſeal, in the city of Tours, this 15th day of December, in the 12th year of our reign.'

When theſe letters were finiſhed to the ſatisfaction of the king, council and ambaſſadors, the knights made preparations for their departure; and, having taken leave of the king and lords, and paid their expenſes, they ſet out from Tours on their return home.

You before heard that the lord Louis de Sancerre, marſhal of France, was reſident in the neighbourhood of Carcaſſone, and had been ſo a long time, as lieutenant for the king over all thoſe countries as far as the Dordogne. The biſhop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere ſent

for him to Toulouſe, and thus addreſſed him:— 'Marſhal, the viſcount de Châteaubon, who declares himſelf heir, by the death of Gaſton count de Foix, to the county of Foix and its dependancies, ſave and except what may concern Béarn, is in treaty with us. We have ſent intelligence of it to the king and his council; but we know not, nor indeed can we as yet, how the king and his miniſters may pleaſe to act in the matter. Be you, therefore, provided with a ſufficient body of men at arms, and garriſon well the frontiers of Foix. Sir Roger d'Eſpaign and ſir Eſpaign du Lyon are now in France; and if we hear from them, or by meſſengers from the king, that there is no probability of any compromiſe taking place, but that the king means to annex Foix to his crown, you will inſtantly enter that county, and take poſſeſſion of it, according to the powers the king has intruſted to us in this affair.'

The lord Lewis ſaid, that in regard to this he was well prepared, and was increaſing his ſtrength daily, waiting for the anſwer from the king.

We will now return to the duke of Brittany.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

DURING THE RESIDENCE OF THE KING OF FRANCE AND DUKE OF BRITTANY AT TOURS, THEIR DIFFERENCES ARE PARTLY ACCOMMODATED BY MEANS OF THE MARRIAGES OF THE DUKE'S SON WITH A PRINCESS OF FRANCE, AND A SON OF JOHN OF BRITTANY, SON TO THE LATE LORD CHARLES DE BLOIS, WITH A DAUGHTER OF THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

I HAVE mentioned that treaties were negotiating at Tours between the king of France and the duke of Brittany. The duke gave the king and his council a great deal of trouble, for he would not abate any of his pretenſions. When any propoſitions were made to him, he refuſed them; and in like manner was it returned, when he offered any on his part; ſo that there did not ſeem a probability of their diſputes being terminated.

The duke declared himſelf willing to ſerve the king according to the homage he had paid, and to the duty he owed. 'Why then,' aſked the king's council, 'ſince you acknowledge yourſelf vaſſal to the king, do you not obey him in all things?' 'Wherein am I a rebel?' demanded the duke. They mentioned many inſtances, and, firſt, his conduct towards the pope of Avignon, whom the king,

king, his lord, obeyed as the true pope, and with regard to whom he was diſſembling his opinion, and refuſed to obey his commands, filling up all the vacant benefices in his duchy, without paying attention to thoſe who had provided themſelves with bulls from the pope. This, they ſaid, was rebellious againſt the king in thought and deed.

The duke replied,—'That no one had a right to arraign or judge his conſcience but God alone, who was its ſupreme lord. With regard to the two rival popes, he had never made any declaration; that when Urban was elected, he was with his couſin, the earl of Flanders, in the town of Ghent; that the cardinal, Robert de Queſne*, ſent to the earl letters patent, ſealed with his ſeal, which ſignified and certified to my couſin, that, by the grace of God, and the divine inſpiration, the conclave had elected Urban pope. How can an election be ſet aſide that ſeems to me made in the moſt regular manner? I wiſh not to ſay a word againſt the king or his crown, for I am his couſin and vaſſal, and will faithfully ſerve him, whenever I am required, to the utmoſt limits of my duty; but I ſhall ſpeak my mind as to thoſe who do not adviſe him honourably.' 'Tell us who they are, and we will provide a remedy.'

'Oh,' replied the duke, 'you know them better than I do, for you live more with them; but, as to what you have ſaid touching the vacant benefices, I am not ſo ſevere againſt ſuitors for them

* In the MSS. it is Robert de Geneve.

as

as you ſay, for I permit the clergy of my duchy to provide themſelves with bulls from pope Clement; but I object to ſtrangers having the ſame liberty, and will tell you why I refuſe it. They want to carry all the profit of the benefices out of the country, without ſerving them. This is ſo contrary to reaſon, conſcience and juſtice, that I will never conſent to it. You ſay my conduct was rebellious and haughty, reſpecting the king's ſergeants that came with writs into my country of Brittany. I neither am rebellious nor wiſh to be ſo. You ought to know, or, if you do not, you ſhould learn, that the fief of Brittany is ſo noble, no law proceedings can take effect unleſs the duke, its natural lord, ſhall hold an open court of juſtice, to hear cauſes, and the reaſons why any appeals may be made thence, and to ſee that the officers, who bring writs of appeal or ſummons, do their duty regularly: ſhould there be ſergeants or other officers in my duchy negligent, or againſt whom ſtrangers have cauſe of complaint, I would puniſh them ſeverely, for a warning to others. In addition to what I have ſaid, that the king's council do many reprehenſible things, they plainly diſcover their inclinations to encourage the hatred of the king againſt me: the proof is clear, by their ſuffering my couſin, John of Blois, to act in two inſtances very injuriouſly againſt me: the firſt is, the ſigning himſelf John of Brittany, as if, by bearing this name, he could form a claim on the inheritance of that duchy; but he cannot have any right, becauſe I have children, a ſon

and

and daughter, who will ſucceed to my poſſeſſions. Secondly, he bears the ermines, which are the arms of Brittany, and he had formerly renounced the name, arms, and all things thereto appertaining. True it is, that ſir Oliver de Cliſſon ſupports him in this conduct, to vex me; and, as long as this ſhall continue, I will not liſten to any treaty of peace or friendſhip with the king. I ſhall not make war againſt him, for he is my natural lord, but if, through envious or malevolent informations, he make war on me, I will defend myſelf, and ſhall be found ready on my own territories. All that I have now ſaid, I wiſh the king to be made acquainted with.'

Such was the bitterneſs with which theſe negotiations were carried on between the king of France and the duke of Brittany. The duke was maſter of his council, but the king was led by ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, the bègue de Villaines, ſir John le Mercier and ſir William de Montagu. The duke of Burgundy, who ſaw more clearly into this matter, was uneaſy that the duke's reaſons were made public, though he ſupported them privately as much as he could, in which he was aſſiſted by the duke of Berry, who hated the confidential adviſers of the king. By their means, his treaſurer, Bethiſac, had ſuffered an ignominious death at Beziers, which he was forced to put up with, for it was not yet time to revenge himſelf.

In this ſtate did they remain at Tours for upwards of three months, without any progreſs being made in the treaties. They were on the point of being

being broken off, for the king was impatient at the delays, and wanted to return to Paris, whence he would iſſue a ſpecial ſummons for the enſuing ſummer, and make war on the duke of Brittany and his allies, leaving all others in peace. But the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, the lord de Coucy, the count de Saint Pol, ſir Guy de la Trimouille, the chancellor of France, and many other great barons and prelates, deſirous that an end ſhould be put to theſe differences, held a conference, and ſaid,—'We, who are ſo nearly connected with the king and the greateſt barons of his realm, having agreed to meet the Engliſh commiſſioners this Lent at Amiens, to conſider of a treaty of peace, muſt haſten to put an end to this ill humour of the king and the duke of Brittany; for, ſhould we ſeparate without doing ſo, the Engliſh would have the advantage in the buſineſs at Amiens: they will expect the ſupport of the duke of Brittany and his country, for they are near neighbours, and we ſhall have a war with Brittany and England, like what we had before, and it will be too heavy for us.'

Theſe lords and their councils ſo often turned the matter over, that they at length diſcovered a means of reconciliation between the king and the duke of Brittany. I will mention it, for without this I do not believe it would ever have taken place. It was propoſed that a marriage between the ſon of the duke of Brittany and a daughter of the king of France ſhould take place; and, as John of Brittany had a ſon, a ſimilar connection

ſhould

ſhould be formed with the daughter of the duke of Brittany. Theſe articles were agreed upon: but, notwithſtanding this alliance, John of Brittany was obliged to lay aſide the arms of Brittany, and take thoſe of Châtillon; and, if he were deſirous of bearing any thing relative to Brittany, as a deſcendant of that houſe by his mother's ſide, he might bear on the arms of Châtillon a bordure ermine, three labels or, and an eſcutcheon ermine in chief gules, and none others. Thus was the buſineſs brought to a concluſion, and the duke reſtored to the friendſhip of the king of France and his uncles. He dined with the king, in company with John of Brittany, count de Penthievre, and much affection was mutually diſplayed by all parties, on account of the marriages which had been agreed to be ſolemnized.

The duke of Brittany would never ſee ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, for the hatred he bore him; but the conſtable was indifferent to this, as the hatred was mutual. All things being now ſettled, and the lords having ſworn to ſee theſe marriages conſummated when the children ſhould be of a proper age, and the different treaties having been engroſſed, they thought it time to quit Tours, for their ſtay had been too long, and return to Paris, as the time was approaching for the conferences at Amiens. The king of France, his brother, uncles and council, had promiſed to be there to receive the king of England and his council. The duke of Brittany took leave of the king, his brother and uncles, and of thoſe moſt in his favour, and ſet out from

from Tours for his own country; as did the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, with other lords; but the king, the duke of Touraine, the duke of Bourbon and the lord de Coucy, ſtaid at Tours, and I will tell the reaſon.

CHAP. XXXIII.

THE COUNT DE BLOIS AND MARY OF NAMUR, HIS COUNTESS, SELL TO THE DUKE OF TOURAINE THE COUNTY OF BLOIS WITH OTHER LANDS. — THE VISCOUNT DE CHASTELBON TAKES POSSESSION OF THE INHERITANCES OF THE LATE COUNT DE FOIX.

I HAVE before recorded in this hiſtory, that Louis de Blois, ſon to the count de Blois, had died when young, at Beaumont in Hainault, leaving the lady Mary, daughter of the duke of Berry, a widow, who loſt by the event many of the good things of this world; for her huſband was a rich heir, and would have been a powerful lord. I mention this, becauſe I wiſh it to be known in times to come how ſuch large properties have been diſpoſed of or alienated.

The count and counteſs of Blois were not formed to have any more children; for, by indulging themſelves too much in the pleaſures of the table, and eating too many ſweet diſhes, they were become enormouſly

enormouſly fat. The count could no longer mount his horſe, but was always carried in a car whenever he travelled from one place to another, or took the diverſions of hunting or hawking. As this was well known to the lords of France, a thought ſtruck the duke of Touraine, during his reſidence at Tours, which he carried into effect.

The duke had a very large ſum of ready money, perhaps a million of florins, lying idle, which he had received from the count de Vertus, on his marriage with the lady Valentina of Milan. This money he wanted to diſpoſe of to advantage. He knew the great properties of the count de Blois would be diſperſed after his death. The county of Blois would fall to John of Brittany, who was his couſin-german; the lands in Hainault to the duke of Juliers and duke of Lancaſter, excepting Chimay, which would go to the Conflans in Champagne. The county of Soiſſons had belonged formerly to the counts of Blois, but was alienated to the lord de Coucy, for the ranſom of Guy de Blois from England. The lands of Argies and Nouvion went to other heirs: Holland and Zealand fell to the count of Hainault. Thus would this noble inheritance be diſperſed piece-meal, for it was well known it muſt happen on the death of the preſent poſſeſſor. The duke of Touraine caſt his eyes on this property, as he had money enough to purchaſe it, were it ſold at a fair price, and determined to deſire the king, his brother, to treat with the count de Blois for the county of Blois, which was a valuable property, and very convenient

to

to him by bordering on his duchy of Touraine. To this county are alſo attached many conſiderable fiefs.

The duke of Touraine, having this ſcheme in his head, did not reſt before he mentioned it, firſt to the king, then to the duke of Bourbon, and to the lord de Coucy, who was an able negotiator and much in favour with the count de Blois, for he had married the daughter of his couſin-german the duke of Lorraine. The duke of Touraine and the above-mentioned perſons were careful not to drop the leaſt hint of this buſineſs to the duke of Berry, becauſe the lady Mary, his daughter, had her jointure of ſix thouſand francs a-year ſettled on this county, and the duke of Berry imagined that, for this ſum and the charges that would accrue, he ſhould obtain the county of Blois, for a perſon more covetous of other people's property could not be found. The duke of Burgundy was alſo kept ignorant of this plan, becauſe the lady Margaret, his eldeſt daughter, was married to William of Hainault, ſon to the count of Hainault; and he thought, that by ſome incident, by purchaſe or otherwiſe, the lands of Holland, Zealand and Hainault might revert to his ſon-in-law, the count d'Oſtrevant, or to his ſon John of Burgundy, who had married Margaret, eldeſt daughter of the count of Hainault.

The king and the three other lords propoſed therefore, on their departure from Tours, to viſit their couſin the count Guy de Blois, who reſided at a handſome caſtle, eight leagues from Tours, called

Château-morant, and to open a treaty for the ſale of the county of Blois, with the count and the counteſs, who was very avaricious.

It chanced, by ſome accident I am unacquainted with, that the bailiff of Blois, named ſir Reginald de Sens, a knight of law and arms, and of great prudence, heard of this intended viſit and its purpoſes. He was much concerned from the love he bore his lord, leſt he might diſhonour himſelf and diſinherit his heirs by a ſale, for which he had no need, and ſeverely wound his conſcience. He determined therefore, if poſſible, to prevent it, and, ſetting out from Blois, rode all night to Château-morant, where, being introduced to the count, he ſaid, 'My lord, the king of France, the dukes of Touraine and Bourbon, with the lord de Coucy, are coming hither.' 'That is true,' replied the count: 'why do you mention it?' 'I am come to tell it, becauſe you will be preſſed to ſell your heritage. Conſider well the ſubject, as you have time before hand.'

The count de Blois was much ſurpriſed at hearing this, and ſaid,—'I cannot prevent any one from ſpeaking to me, or offering propoſals; but, before I conſent to the ſelling my inheritance, fraudulently diſinheriting my heirs and diſhonouring myſelf, I muſt have neither plate nor porringer of ſilver to pawn.' 'My lord,' replied the knight, 'remember this when the time comes, for you will ſee that all I have told you is true.' 'Don't doubt it, bailiff,' ſaid the count: 'I am not ſo young nor ſo fooliſh to liſten to ſuch propoſals.'

poſals.' On this, the bailiff returned to Blois, where he reſided, for he did not wiſh the company he had mentioned ſhould find him there. Two days after, the king and his company arrived at Château-morant, to the great joy of the count and counteſs of Blois, at his viſiting them, and they entertained him ſplendidly. The king, to win the affections of the count, and gain him over to his plan, ſaid,—'Fair couſin, I ſee you are the lord in our kingdom the moſt endowed with honour and liberality, and that in former times you muſt have had large expenſes: to aſſiſt and recompence you, we will grant you a tax on the county of Blois that ſhall be worth twenty thouſand francs.'

The count returned his thanks and accepted the gift, which, however, was of no value to him, for he never received one penny from it. After this, the matter of ſale of the county of Blois was entered on, firſt by the king, and ſeconded by the duke of Bourbon; but, finding the count very cool and indifferent about it, they addreſſed themſelves to his lady, and remonſtrated with her, in ſpecious terms, reſpecting the hazard ſhe incurred of being reduced to a poor eſtate ſhould ſhe ſurvive the count, as ſhe had every appearance of doing; and it would be more for her advantage to have riches and jewels in plenty, which ſhe might eaſily ſecure, if ſhe would perſuade her lord to liſten to the propoſals they had made for the purchaſe of the county of Blois.

The counteſs, from her avaricious diſpoſition

and her eagerneſs to receive the florins, aſſented, and procured every thing they wanted, with the aſſiſtance of another perſon, that is to ſay, a valet de chambre of the count, called Sohier, who was the ſon of a cloth-worker in the town of Mechlin. This Sohier ſo completely governed the count, that every thing was done as he ordered, and the count had given him upwards of five hundred francs of yearly revenue for ever. See the miſchief of ſuch caſes, and how miſerably ſome lords are governed; for Sohier had neither prudence nor ſenſe worth mentioning, to deſerve ſuch rewards, except the fooliſh pleaſure of his lord, who had taken a friendſhip to him.

In like manner, the duke of Berry had a worthleſs fellow, called James Thibaut, that governed him, to whom he had, at different times, given two hundred thouſand francs, which he might as well have thrown into the river. If, therefore, Sohier would have wiſhed to have excuſed himſelf for this ſale taking place, he could not, for, if he had pleaſed, it never would have been done; but to gratify the king, the dukes of Touraine and Bourbon, and the lord de Coucy, as well as the counteſs de Blois, who, through avarice, had already conſented to every thing, he urged on the count in private, and made him totally forget every thing he had promiſed his bailiff, and the reverſion of the county of Blois was ſold for two hundred thouſand francs, and the duke de Touraine was to take on himſelf the payment of the counteſs de Dunois' jointure of ſix thouſand francs.

There

There was alſo another ſale made, of the reverſion of the lands in Hainault, for which the duke of Touraine was likewiſe to pay two hundred thouſand francs.

Count Guy de Blois, indeed, reſerved in this laſt ſale the conſent of the count de Hainault, the lord paramount of thoſe lands, but who would never inſiſt on his homage for them. The king of France and the duke of Touraine, however, took on them to anſwer for the conſequences, and before they left the count, they bound him ſo completely in writings ſealed, that he could not any way retract, for he had none to adviſe him but Sohier, who was illiterate, having never had any education, and he was already on their ſide.

In ſuch a manner were theſe bargains concluded, which I have detailed as fully as I was able, that in future times the whole truth of the tranſactions may be made public, by means of theſe chronicles. In good truth, my lord and patron, count Guy de Blois, like an ignorant and ill-adviſed perſon, puſhed on by his counteſs and his valet de chambre, made theſe miſerable ſales.

When every thing was concluded relative to this buſineſs, to the ſatisfaction of the king, the duke of Touraine and their counſellors, they took leave of the count and returned to Paris. The news of theſe purchaſes made a great noiſe in many countries, and aſtoniſhed all who heard it.

We will ſpeak of ſir Roger d'Eſpaign and ſir Eſpaing du Lyon, and ſay how they proſpered

ſince they departed from Tours, on the road to Toulouſe, where the biſhop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere were waiting for them. Their arrival at Toulouſe gave great pleaſure, for they had been long expected: they inſtantly waited on the Commiſſioners from France, to ſhew their papers, which they had received from the king, and which fully explained the ſucceſsful iſſue of their journey. The biſhop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere entertained them well, and ſhewed they were much rejoiced at the ſucceſſion, with all its dependancies, of the count de Foix, devolved on the viſcount de Châteaubon, according to the tenure and form whereby the count Gaſton had held them, and in the manner detailed in the written documents.

After conſidering the buſineſs, they thought it adviſeable that ſir Roger d'Eſpaign and ſir Eſpaing du Lyon, who had taken ſo much pains and incurred ſo much labour in it, ſhould wait on the viſcount de Châteaubon and the councils of Foix and Béarn, to inform them what had been agreed on, that all things might be regularly managed, to bring the whole to a happy concluſion.

The knights conſented to this propoſal, and, having refreſhed themſelves two days in Toulouſe, ſet out for Saint Gaudens. The viſcount was not there, but at a beautiful caſtle, at the entrance of Béarn, called Pau, where they found him.

He was happy to ſee them, having long wiſhed it, but much more ſo when he learnt that the king of France deſiſted from taking poſſeſſion of the

the county of Foix: he knew well where to find the money required for re-payment of the mortgage, and that enough would remain after this was done.

I believe my readers, as well as myſelf, will think I have ſaid enough reſpecting the affairs of Foix and Béarn: I will therefore leave them, and enter on other matters; for it would take up too much time to purſue in detail every thing that paſſed there on the return of the two knights from France. To conclude, the viſcount de Châtaubon was acknowledged count de Foix and Béarn, on the ſame terms on which count Gaſton de Foix, of happy memory, had held them, and he received the homage of all who were his vaſſals. He ſatisfied his two couſins, ſir Evan and ſir Gracien, the baſtards of Foix, by the handſome allotment he gave them of the inheritances and moveables of their father, and repaid, to the commiſſioners from France, the mortgage that was on Foix. Before all theſe things were accompliſhed, ſummer was far advanced, and the biſhop of Noyon remained at Toulouſe with the lord de la Riviere; for they would not depart until every thing was completely ſettled, to the honour and profit of the crown, according to the inſtructions they had received from the king of France.

CHAP. XXXIV.

A GRAND ASSEMBLY AT AMIENS, OF THE KING AND LORDS OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND, TO TREAT OF A PEACE BETWEEN THE TWO KINGDOMS.

WE will now ſpeak of the grand aſſembly of the lords of France and England, which was held in the city of Amiens, to treat of a final peace between the two countries, at Mid-lent, in the year of grace 1391. Great preparations were made before the arrival of the lords; and in particular thoſe made for the king, his three uncles, and many of the great barons and prelates, were very ſumptuous. Other lords were deſirous to make a figure; for it was currently reported and believed that king Richard of England intended being there in perſon, to form acquaintance with thoſe he had never yet ſeen, but he did not come.

That he had intentions of being there was certain, for he came as far as Dover with his three uncles of Lancaſter, York and Gloceſter, meaning to croſs the ſea with them. Many councils were held at Dover, to debate whether the king ſhould proceed further or not; and the council, having conſidered all things, decided he ſhould remain in the caſtle of Dover, and the duke of Gloceſter with him. The dukes of Lancaſter and York, the

the earl of Huntingdon, the earl of Derby, ſir Thomas Percy, the biſhop of Durham, the biſhop of London and others of the king's council, prepared to croſs the channel. They did not all paſs over inſtantly, but ſent their purveyances forward, and then croſſed themſelves to Calais, where they were lodged.

When the day approached for the meeting at Amiens, theſe lords ſet out from Calais together: they were more than two hundred horſe, and it was a fine ſight, for they rode in handſome array. The king of France had given orders that, during the time the conferences ſhould laſt, all the expenſes of the Engliſh, in coming to and returning from Amiens to Calais, ſhould be defrayed by his treaſury; that is to ſay, their nouriſhment as well as that of their horſes.

In company with the dukes of Lancaſter and York was their niece, daughter of their ſiſter and the lord de Coucy: ſhe was ſtiled ducheſs of Ireland, having been married to that duke, as you have heard. This young lady came to viſit her father at Amiens; for hitherto ſhe had ſeen but little of him, which made her naturally more anxious now to wait on him. She travelled in good ſtate, but like a widow who had enjoyed but little pleaſure in her marriage.

It had been ordered by the king and council of France, that the Engliſh lords, who were coming to Amiens to arrange a ſolid peace, ſhould be received with the greateſt honours; and that the four dukes then at Amiens, namely, the dukes

of

of Touraine, Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, ſhould ride without the town to meet and bid them welcome. As ſoon, therefore, as the Engliſh were near Amiens, theſe dukes, attended by all the great barons of France, rode forth in grand array. The duke of Touraine took the lead, in great ſtate, and, when he met his couſins of England, they mutually ſaluted each other, with every reſpect, as ſuch lords know how to do. When the duke of Touraine had converſed a ſhort time with them, he took his leave, returned to the town with his numerous attendants, and diſmounted at the palace of the biſhop, where the king reſided, remaining with him in his chamber.

The other three dukes, after the departure of the duke of Touraine, rode each with his array to meet the Engliſh lords; and, on their meeting, many old acquaintances were renewed with a ſatisfaction ſuch as was a pleaſure to behold. When theſe dukes had converſed a little, the gallant count-dauphin of Auvergne (who, during the time he was a hoſtage in England, had lived much with the duke of Lancaſter, and bore him great affection) advanced his horſe, and ſaluted him: the duke of Lancaſter no ſooner recollected him than he preſſed him to his arms, and ſhewed him every ſign of friendſhip: their converſation was interrupted by the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who joined the duke of Lancaſter.

The duke of Bourbon, the lord de Coucy and the count de St. Pol, rode with the duke of York, the earl of Huntingdon and ſir Thomas Percy, converſing

converſing all the way as they approached Amiens. At the entrance of the city, the honours paid the Engliſh were increaſed; for the duke of Lancaſter rode between the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, and when their horſes moved it was but a foot's pace. Their horſes heads were in a line, which they took care to keep; and thus theſe three paſſed the gates, riding very ſlowly and paying each other mutual honours, to the palace of the biſhop, where the king and the duke of Touraine were. Having diſmounted, they aſcended the ſteps; and the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, taking the Engliſh dukes by their hands, led them towards the king of France, the other lords following.

When in the preſence of the king, the three dukes, who ſupported the uncles of the king of England, and the other French lords, caſt themſelves on their knees; but the two Engliſh dukes remained as they were, inclining gently their heads in honour of the king. The king inſtantly advanced to them, took their hands, and bade his uncles and the other lords riſe, and then entered into a friendly converſation with them, as did the barons of France with thoſe of England. After this firſt interview, the lords of England took their leave of the king, his brother and uncles, and were attended as far as the ſteps of the palace, when they mounted their horſes, and were eſcorted to their hôtels by the conſtable of France, the lord de Coucy, the count de St. Pol, ſir John de Vienne, and the other lords of France, who there took leave,

leave, and went back to the king or to their lodgings. The ducheſs of Ireland was lodged, with her attendants, at her father the lord de Coucy's hôtel.

It had been forbidden by the king and council, (and public proclamation had been made before the arrival of the Engliſh, that no one might plead ignorance,) that any outrages whatever be committed during the holding of theſe conferences under pain of death, or any quarrelling with the Engliſh, or riot, during their ſtay in the city of Amiens. All knights and ſquires were ſtrictly commanded by the king, under pain of incurring his indignation, not to talk of, or propoſe, any deeds of arms to any knight or ſquire from England, but to treat them with the utmoſt civility and attention wherever they ſhould meet, in the fields, the palace, or in church: that no pages nor varlets of any lords of France cauſe riot or quarrels in the inns, under pain of loſing their heads; and that whatever the Engliſh knights or ſquires might aſk for ſhould be immediately given them: that no innkeeper ſhould demand payment for meat or drink, or other common neceſſaries.

It was alſo forbidden any knight or ſquire of France to be out at night without a torch; but the Engliſh might do ſo, if they pleaſed; and if any Engliſhman were found on the roads, or in any other place, having loſt his way, he ſhould be courteouſly conducted to where he lodged.

Four guards of one thouſand men each, were ſtationed at the four ſquares of Amiens; and, ſhould

ſhould there be a fire during the night in any part of the town, theſe guards were not to move on any account from their poſts; but, when the fire-bell rang, thoſe appointed to that duty were to haſten to extinguiſh it.

It was likewiſe ordered, that no knight or ſquire ſhould advance from his place to ſpeak with the king, unleſs called or ſpoken to by his majeſty; and that, during the time the Engliſh barons were in the king's preſence, no knight or ſquire converſe together nor addreſs the Engliſh.

It was commanded, under heavy penalties, that no innkeeper, or others, ſteal or put aſide, through avarice, any of the bows or arrows of the Engliſh; but if, out of courteſy, the Engliſh thought proper to give any to them, they might accept ſuch preſents.

You muſt know, that all theſe orders and regulations were formed with great deliberation of council, to do the more honour to the Engliſh who were come to negotiate a peace, and proclaimed ſeveral times, that they might be ſtrictly attended to; for, if they were infringed, thoſe guilty of it were to have been puniſhed without mercy.

Every day conferences were held with the Engliſh lords, with ſcarcely any intermiſſion, during the fortnight they ſtaid at Amiens, without coming to any concluſion, for the difference was too great in their demands. The French would have Calais razed to the ground, ſo that it ſhould never again be habitable. The Engliſh would not

liſten

liſten to this, nor dared they conſent to ſuch an article in the treaty; for the commons of England love Calais more than any other town in the world, ſaying, that as long as they are maſters of Calais, they carry the keys of France at their girdle. However great the differences between the lords of England and France in theſe matters, and the length of time they were occupied on them, they ſeparated with great good humour on both ſides from the conferences, ſaying,—'We will again meet to-morrow on this buſineſs; and we hope, through our diligence, to bring the matter at laſt to a happy concluſion.'

The king of France entertained the lords of England three times moſt magnificently at dinner in the epiſcopal palace. The duke of Touraine, the duke of Berry, the duke of Burgundy, the duke of Bourbon, the lord de Coucy, the count de Saint Pol, gave each a dinner to the Engliſh commiſſioners. Whatever the Engliſh wanted was delivered them, free of coſt, by clerks who were appointed to take an account of all things they had, which they referred to the king's exchequer for payment.

You muſt know, that although the dukes of Lancaſter and York were at Amiens, they had received ſuch inſtructions from the king of England and his council, that they could not add to nor alter any of the terms of the treaty they had been charged with. Many perſons will not readily believe what I am about to ſay, though it is ſtrictly true, which is, that the Engliſh are fonder of war than

than of peace. During the reign of king Edward, of happy memory, and in the lifetime of his ſon the prince of Wales, they made ſuch grand conqueſts in France, and by their victories and ranſoms of towns, caſtles and men, gained ſuch wealth that the pooreſt knights became rich; and thoſe who were not gentlemen by birth, by gallantly hazarding themſelves in theſe wars, were ennobled for their valour and wealth. Thoſe who came after them were deſirous of following the ſame road, although ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin and many other knights of France, as has been related in this hiſtory, by their valour and prudence had greatly changed the face of the Engliſh poſſeſſions in France ſince the times of king Edward and his ſon.

Even the duke of Gloceſter, ſon to king Edward, inclined to the opinion of the commons, as did many other knights and ſquires who were deſirous of war to enable them to ſupport their ſtate. This cauſed great difficulties in forming any treaty of final peace; notwithſtanding the king of England was earneſt about it. By him and the duke of Lancaſter were theſe conferences holden in the city of Amiens; but they were fearful of angering the commons of England: they indeed would have conſented to a peace, if the French would have reſtored all that had been given them by the treaty of Bretigny, and paid the arrears of fourteen hundred thouſand francs, which were unſettled when they recommenced the war.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LORDS, NOT BEING ABLE TO AGREE ON THE TERMS OF PEACE, PROLONG THE TRUCE ONE YEAR.—THE ENGLISH, ON THEIR RETURN, ARE ACCOMPANIED BY THE LORD DE CHASTEAU-MORANT, TO BRING BACK THE KING OF ENGLAND'S FINAL ANSWER.

THE conferences were held at Amiens, reſpecting a peace, with great perſeverance and attention on the part of the lords commiſſioners of each nation. It was wondered why the matter failed; for the duke of Burgundy and the duke of Lancaſter were much in earneſt to bring it to a happy concluſion, reſerving always what was contained in their private inſtructions, which they dared not to go beyond.

The French, perceiving the Engliſh were obſtinate in their terms, in order to ſoften them, offered, if they would conſent to raze Calais, the peaceable poſſeſſion of what they then held in Aquitaine, with nine biſhopricks, independent of all other juriſdictions, and payment of the fourteen hundred thouſand francs within three years. The duke of Lancaſter and his council replied,—'We have remained here a long time without concluding any thing, nor ſhall we be able to finiſh the buſineſs without returning to England, and reporting to

to the king our lord, and the three ſtates of the realm, what you have now propoſed. Be aſſured that my brother York and myſelf will uſe every diligence, as well as our council who have attended us hither, in ending the matter according to ours and your wiſhes, with the exception of what you demand concerning Calais; but that we dare not mention, without incurring the hatred of the people. It will be therefore better to remain ſilent, than to ſay what would bring blame and hatred againſt us.'

The king of France was tolerably ſatisfied with this anſwer, as were his uncles: they ſaid, that if, when returned to England, they would exert themſelves to obtain peace, a trifle on their part ſhould not prevent it; for the war had laſted too long, and cauſed numberleſs misfortunes to both countries.

During the aſſembly at Amiens, the commiſſioners bethought themſelves, that as the truce between France and England would expire on St. John Baptiſt's day, they might prolong it, for themſelves and their allies, without any blame, for one year longer, by ſea and land.

With regard to the determination that might be given by the parliament to their propoſals, they deſired to ſend two knights with them to England, to bring back the final anſwer. To this the dukes of Lancaſter and York readily aſſented.

I was told, and believe truly, from the appearances I obſerved, that the king of France was

very deſirous of peace at almoſt any rate; for there were reports current throughout France, that Amurat had invaded, with a powerful army of Turks, the kingdom of Hungary. This intelligence had been brought by the elder lord Boucicaut, marſhal of France, and ſir John de Charonge*, who were lately returned from Greece and parts of Turkey.

The king of France, when younger, had an anxious wiſh to undertake an expedition againſt Amurat, and recover Armenia, which the Turks had ſeized from king Léon, who was then preſent at the conferences at Amiens. He had ſtated his grievances to the dukes of Lancaſter and York, who knew him well, for he had been in England, to offer his mediation for peace between the two countries, when the king of France was encamped near Sluys.

The king of France, weighing this invaſion of the Turks in his mind, and his former promiſes of ſupport to the king of Armenia, thus ſpoke to the duke of Lancaſter when he took his leave,—'Fair couſin, if peace ſhall be eſtabliſhed between us and the king of England, we may undertake an expedition to Turkey, to aſſiſt the king of Armenia and the emperor of Conſtantinople, whom Amurat preſſes very hard, and recover Armenia from the hands of the Turks. They tell us that Amurat is

* The MS. has Carouge, which is more probable, for he went on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land after his combat with James le Gris.

a man

a man of great valour and enterprife, but of a fect contrary to our faith, which he daily oppreffes: we ought, therefore, to unite in its defence; and I entreat, fair couſin, that you will conſider of it, and do every thing you can to promote this expedition when returned to England.' The duke of Lancaſter promiſed to comply with his requeſt, and to exert himſelf ſo ſtrongly in the matter, that the effects would ſoon be apparent. Upon this they took leave of each other.

The conferences at Amiens laſted fifteen days, and the lords from England were the firſt to ſeparate. They carried with them the outlines of a treaty, to lay before the king of England and his council. The ducheſs of Ireland bade adieu to her father, the lord de Coucy, and accompanied her uncles on their return. All the Engliſh, on their road to and from Calais, and while at Amiens, needed not to have expended a farthing unleſs they choſe it, for the king had ordered their whole expenſes to be defrayed by his officers.

The duke of Burgundy went to Arras, where he met his ducheſs, who, during the time of the conferences, had viſited Flanders. The dukes of Touraine, Berry and Bourbon remained with the king, whoſe intention it was to go to Beauvais and Giſors, to amuſe himſelf, and return that way to Paris.

In company with the dukes of Lancaſter and York were the two French knights who were ſent to England by orders from the king of France; their names were ſir John de Châteaumorant and

ſir Taupin de Cantemelle; and they were to bring back the final anſwer of the king and council of England reſpecting a general peace.

The Engliſh dukes were eſcorted to Calais by ſir Reginald de Roye, the lord de Montaurel and the lord de la Vieville, who then took their leave and returned. The Engliſh croſſed the channel at their leiſure to Dover, where they found the king and the duke of Gloceſter waiting for them. A grand council was holden by the king and his lords on all that had paſſed at Amiens; the king was well pleaſed with what his uncles had done there; but the duke of Gloceſter, who was always againſt any treaty with France, declared, that not any propoſitions for peace could be determined on till they were laid before the parliament, which ought inſtantly to be ſummoned; and whatever meaſure the three eſtates of the realm ſhould reſolve on, that ought to be adopted, and none other.

This propoſal of the duke of Gloceſter was agreed to: indeed they dared not oppoſe him, for he was too popular with the commons of England. The French knights were told that they muſt continue their journey to London, otherwiſe they could not obtain any anſwer. They were willing to conſent to this, as was right, and ſet out with the king and his lords, the greater part of whom went ſtraight to London; but the king turned off at Dartford, and took the road to Eltham, where he had a handſome palace. He there ſtaid ſome little time with the queen, and they came together to Shene, and thence to Windſor, where the

the French knights received an anſwer; but before I ſay what that anſwer was, I muſt ſpeak of the king of France.

CHAP. XXXVI.

THE FIRST ILLNESS OF KING CHARLES.—COUNT BERNARD D'ARMAGNAC DOES HOMAGE TO THE KING.—THE LORD DE CHASTELMORANT RETURNS FROM ENGLAND WITH AN ANSWER RESPECTING PEACE.

AFTER the conferences at Amiens, the king of France, unfortunately, and through his imprudence, was ſeized with a burning fever, for which he was adviſed to change the air. He was put into a litter and carried to Beauvais, where he remained in the biſhop's palace until cured. His brother, the duke of Touraine, and his uncles of Berry and Bourbon, attended him conſtantly, and there kept their Eaſter. When the king was perfectly recovered, and able to ride, he went to Giſors, at the entrance of Normandy, for the pleaſure of hunting, as there are many large foreſts in the neighbourhood. During his reſidence at Giſors, ſir Bernard d'Armagnac, brother to the count who died in Italy, came thither in handſome ſtate, accompanied by the dauphin of Auvergne,

whom he met at Paris. As he held the counties of Armagnac and Rodez from the crown of France, he paid the king homage for them, in the uſual manner of vaſſals to their lord paramount for the fiefs they hold. He became now the king of France's man, and, having had the articles of homage properly drawn out and engroſſed, he and the dauphin took leave of the king, and returned to Auvergne and Languedoc.

About Aſcenſion-day, the king came to Paris in perfect health, and fixed his reſidence at the hôtel de Saint Pol, which had been prepared for him, the queen and the ducheſs of Touraine having arrived there before him.

The lord de Châteaumorant and ſir Taupin Cantemelle were all this time waiting in England for an anſwer. They had attended the feaſt of Saint George at Windſor, where was a brilliant company of barons, and the king's uncles. The lords who had been at Amiens conſulted together, on the promiſes they had made the king of France, as well as in reſpect to an anſwer for the two knights, who were very preſſing to have one, and leave to return home. After conſidering the matter, they thus addreſſed them: 'You Châteaumorant, and you Cantemelle, muſt know, that at this moment we cannot obtain any anſwer for you to carry to the king of France. It will be a long time before the parliament will take up the matter, for it does not meet before Michaelmas. But to acquit ourſelves, and to excuſe you, we will write letters fully explanatory of the delay; and

and if you, or any others, will return hither during the ſitting of parliament, you ſhall receive ſuch anſwer as the three eſtates of the kingdom ſhall think proper to give.'

The French knights hearing this, and ſeeing no probability of having any other anſwer, replied,—'In the name of God, we are ſatisfied with what you now ſay: write and ſeal your letters, and we will ſet out on our return.' This being done, they took leave of the king, and went to London to make preparations for their departure. The king ordered all their expenſes to be paid, and had them conducted to Dover, where the bailiff had provided a veſſel for them and their horſes; but they were detained at Dover five days waiting for a wind. On the ſixth it was favourable, and they landed at Boulogne. They took their road through Amiens, and by ſhort days journey arrived at Paris, when they found the king and his lords, for it was Whitſuntide. They delivered their letters, which were immediately read, but I believe no great reliance was put on them, and in a ſhort time, they had other affairs of greater conſequence at home to attend to.

CHAP. XXXVII.

SIR PETER DE CRAON, THROUGH MALEVOLENCE, WAYLAYS SIR OIVER DE CLISSON, BEATS AND SEVERELY WOUNDS HIM.—THE KING AND COUNCIL ARE GREATLY ANGERED THEREAT.

YOU have before heard how ſir Peter de Craon, a knight of high birth and great wealth, was diſgraced by the king of France and his brother, as well as the reaſons for it; and that, having retired to the court of Brittany, the duke had aſſured him, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon was at the bottom of this buſineſs. Some ſuppoſed the duke had been inſtigated to ſay this from his hatred to the conſtable, whom he wiſhed to diſhonour and deſtroy. While ſir Peter de Craon was with the duke of Brittany, they had frequent converſations on what means they could employ to put ſir Oliver to death; for they ſaid, that if he were but deſtroyed, no one would ſeek to revenge his loſs; and the duke expreſſed his regret he had not put him to death when in his caſtle of Ermine, adding, he would willingly give one hundred thouſand francs if he could once more have him in his poſſeſſion.

Sir Peter de Craon, obſerving the mortal hatred of the duke to Cliſſon, thought of an extraordinary expedient when meditating alone on this ſubject, for it is from appearances we muſt judge. He reſolved, whatever might be the conſequences, that he

he would himſelf aſſaſſinate the conſtable, or have it done under his own eyes, and not attend to any thing until the deed were performed, when he would afterwards treat for his pardon. He was no way afraid of what John of Blois or the viſcount de Rohan, who had married the conſtable's two daughters, could do againſt him: he held them very cheap, for, with the aſſiſtance of the duke and his family-connections, he could withſtand them both. The houſe of Blois was much weakened, and the count Guy de Blois had juſt ſold the reverſion of that county to the duke of Touraine, which by ſucceſſion ought to have deſcended to John of Brittany, who had in this ſale been very unkindly treated by the count de Blois. Now, if the conſtable were ſlain, by degrees he would ſoon get the better of the favourites of the king and the duke of Touraine, ſuch as the lord de la Riviere, ſir John le Mercier, Montagu, le bègue de Villaines, ſir John de Bueil, and others in the king's confidence who were friends of the conſtable, and whom the dukes of Berry and Burgundy deteſted, notwithſtanding the outward marks of friendſhip they ſhewed them.

Sir Peter de Craon perſevered in his abominable deſigns, urged on by that enemy who never ſleeps, and who delights in the heart of the wicked man that is inclined towards him. He regularly formed his whole plan, in the manner I ſhall mention; but, had he foreſeen the great evils and miſchiefs that enſued from them, it is to be hoped reaſon and temperance would have ruled in his heart to prevent

prevent them from being put into execution. It is truly ſaid, that a too great deſire to accompliſh an object clouds the underſtanding, and that vicious inclinations overrule virtue. Thus it happened to ſir Peter de Craon, whoſe eagerneſs to deſtroy the conſtable made him liſten to the counſels of folly and madneſs.

He had ſecured a ſafe retreat with the duke of Brittany, after the deed ſhould be done and the conſtable dead, without fear of any ſearch being there made for him, for the duke had promiſed him an aſylum; and, ſhould the king of France follow him with a powerful army to Brittany, in one night he could embark and ſail for Bayonne, Bourdeaux or England, where he could not come after him. The Engliſh mortally hated Cliſſon, for his great ſeverity to them from the time he had turned to the French: before that period he was ſtrongly connected with them, and had done the crown eſſential ſervices, as you have had it related in this hiſtory.

Sir Peter de Craon long brooded over this intended deed, without mentioning it to any one: I know not if he even told it to the duke of Brittany. Some think he muſt have diſcloſed it to him; but others thought the contrary: the firſt opinion, however, was ſtrengthened, if not confirmed, by ſir Peter and his accomplices returning by the ſhorteſt road, and as expeditiouſly as poſſible, to Brittany, inſtantly after the aſſaſſination, as to a place of refuge. In addition to this, he ſold all the caſtles and eſtates he held in Anjou to

the

the duke of Brittany, and had renounced his allegiance to the king of France, under pretence of taking a journey to the Holy Land. I ſhall not ſay more of theſe ſurmiſes, but relate the fact; for I, the author of this hiſtory, was at Paris when this misfortune happened to ſir Oliver de Cliſſon; and ought therefore to be well informed from the inquiries I made concerning it.

You muſt know, that at this period ſir Peter de Craon had a very handſome houſe near the church-yard of Saint John at Paris*, like other great lords, to receive him when he came to that city. This hôtel was, in his abſence, under the care of a houſe-ſteward; and, during the laſt Lent ſeaſon, he had ſent varlets thither for his ſervice, with orders to lay in a large ſtore of wines, and all ſorts of proviſion. He had likewiſe written to the ſteward to purchaſe for him armour, ſuch as coats of mail, gauntlets, ſteel helmets, and other things ſufficient for forty men, and to let him know when they were provided, that he might ſend for them, but to ob-

* 'The ſtreet of the Mauvais-garçons, in the rue des Boucheries, took its name from a ſign. With regard to the other rue des Mauvais-garçons, which leads from the rue de la Verrerie to that of la Tixeranderie, it was formerly called rue de Chartron; but when the lords de Craon built a houſe there, which is now a church-yard, it was called rue de Craon, to the time when Peter de Craon hid himſelf and accomplices within it, to aſſaſſinate ſir Oliver de Cliſſon. The ſtreet then changed its name, and was called la rue des Mauvais-garçons. The hôtel was, by orders from the king, razed to the ground, and the ſpot given to the church-wardens of St. John, to enlarge their church-yard.'——*Sauval Antiquités de Paris.*

ſerve

ſerve the greateſt ſecrecy in the buſineſs. The ſteward, thinking no harm, obeyed the orders, and provided the armour; during which time, ſir Peter reſided at a handſome caſtle of his in Anjou, called Sablé, from whence he ſent at different times four or more determined fellows, in the moſt ſecret manner poſſible, to his hôtel in Paris. He ſaid to them nothing more when they left him, but —'When you arrive at my houſe in Paris, make yourſelves comfortable, and aſk the houſe-ſteward for whatever you may want, who will inſtantly give it to you; but do not, on any account, paſs the gates or ſhew yourſelves. I will one day ſatisfy you well for your obedience, and pay you handſome wages.'

Upon this, they departed, and journeyed to Paris, which they entered at their pleaſure; for in thoſe days the gates were never ſhut night nor day. At length, they amounted to forty courageous bravos, for ſuch were what ſir Peter wanted. There were ſeveral among them who, had they known the buſineſs they were engaged in, would not have come; but ſir Peter took good care not to betray his ſecret. About the feaſts of Whitſuntide, ſir Peter de Craon came to his hôtel in Paris, not in ſtate, but as privately as his men had done. On his arrival, he aſked for the porter, and ſaid; 'I command thee, under pain of having thy eyes thruſt out, not to admit either man or woman into the hôtel, nor permit any one to go out, without my ſpecial orders.' The porter, as well as the houſe-ſteward, pro-

promiſed obedience. He ſhut up in their chambers the wife of the latter, her children and the chambermaid. He was in the right to do this. Had theſe women or children gone into the ſtreet, his arrival would have been known; for young children and women naturally tell all they ſee, and what is intended to be concealed.

Thus, as I have related, were the whole of his people confined within the walls of the hôtel, until the feaſt of the holy ſacrament. You may ſuppoſe, that ſir Peter had his ſpies fully employed, to bring him intelligence; but it was not until the eve of this feaſt he found a fit opportunity to execute his ſcheme, which had vexed him much.

It happened that, on the feaſt of the holy ſacrament, the king of France kept an open court at the hôtel de St. Pol, where he entertained all barons and lords who were in Paris. He was in high enjoyment, as were the queen and the ducheſs of Touraine: to add to their amuſements, after the dinner, liſts were prepared within the courts of the hôtel, and young knights and ſquires, ready armed and mounted for tilting, came thither, and juſted very gallantly. The tiltings were well performed, to the delight of the king, queen, ladies and damſels, and laſted until the evening. The prize for the beſt tilter was adjudged by the queen, the ducheſs of Touraine, and the ladies and heralds appointed to the office, to ſir William de Elandres, count de Namur.

The

The king entertained at ſupper, in the hôtel de Saint Pol, every knight who wiſhed to partake of it; and, afterward, the dancings continued until one o'clock in the morning. When theſe were over, every one retired to his home, without guard and without ſuſpicion. Sir Oliver de Cliſſon remained the laſt; and, when he had taken leave of the king, he returned to the apartment of the duke of Touraine, and aſked, 'My lord, ſhall you ſtay here to-night, or do you go to Poulain's?' This Poulain was treaſurer to the duke of Touraine, and lived at the Croix du Tiroir, near the Silver Lion.

The duke replied,—'Conſtable, I am not determined whether I ſhall ſtay or not; but do you go, for it is high time to retire.' 'My lord, God give you a good night!' ſaid ſir Oliver, and went away. He found his ſervants and horſes waiting for him in the ſquare before the hôtel; but they had not more than eight or ten torches, which the varlets lighted. When the conſtable was mounted, and the torches were borne before him, he rode down the broad ſtreet of St. Catherine.

Sir Peter de Craon's ſpies had this day exerted themſelves, and he knew every particular relative to the conſtable,—of his ſtaying behind the reſt of the company, the exact number of his horſes and attendants. He had, in conſequence, quitted his hôtel with his men all mounted and ſecretly armed; but there were not ſix of them who knew what

what his real intentions were. He had advanced to the cauſeway, near the place of St. Catherine, where he and his people lay hid, waiting for the conſtable to paſs. As ſoon as the conſtable had left the ſtreet of St. Pol, and turned into the ſquare of the great ſtreet, advancing a foot's pace with a torch on each ſide to light him, he began a converſation with one of his ſquires, ſaying,—'I am to have at dinner, to-morrow, my lord of Touraine, the lord de Coucy, ſir John de Vienne, ſir Charles d'Angers, the baron d'Ivry and ſeveral more: be ſure take care they have all things comfortable, and let nothing be ſpared.' As he ſaid this, ſir Peter de Craon and his company advanced, and, without ſaying a word, fell on the conſtable's attendants and extinguiſhed the torches. The conſtable, hearing the clatter of the horſes behind him, thought it was the duke of Touraine who was playing him a trick, and cried out,—'My lord, by my faith, this is very ill done; but I excuſe it, for you are ſo young you make a joke of every thing.' At theſe words, ſir Peter de Craon, drawing his ſword from the ſcabbard, ſaid,—'Death, death! Cliſſon, you muſt die.' 'Who art thou,' ſaid Cliſſon, 'that uttereſt ſuch words?' 'I am Peter de Craon, thy enemy, whom thou haſt ſo often angered, and thou ſhalt now pay for it.' Then, calling to his people, he ſaid,—'Advance, advance! I have found him I was in ſearch of, and whom I have long wanted to ſeize.' He then ſtruck him ſeveral blows, and his men, drawing their ſwords, fell on him. Sir Oliver was quite

quite unarmed, having only a ſhort cutlaſs, not two feet long, which, however, he drew, and defended himſelf with it as well as he could. His ſervants, being quite defenceleſs, were ſoon diſperſed. Some of ſir Peter's men aſked, if they were to murder all? 'Yes,' replied he, 'all who put themſelves in a poſture of defence.'

They could not reſiſt the attack, for they were but eight, and without armour. Sir Peter's men fully intended to murder the conſtable, and their maſter wiſhed nothing more than to ſee it done; but, as I heard from ſome of thoſe who had been in this attack, the moment they learnt that the perſon they were aſſaſſinating was the conſtable of France, their arms became, as it were, nerveleſs through ſurpriſe, and their blows were given weakly and through fear, for in perpetrating wickedneſs none are bold.

The conſtable parried the blows tolerably well with his ſhort cutlaſs; but his defence would have been of no avail, if God's providence had not protected him. He kept ſteady on horſeback ſome time, until he was villanouſly ſtruck on the back part of his head, which knocked him off his horſe. In his fall, he hit againſt the hatch of a baker's door, who was already up to attend to his buſineſs and bake his bread. Having heard the noiſe of horſes on the cauſeway and high words, the baker had, fortunately for the conſtable, half opened the hatch; and ſir Oliver, falling againſt it, burſt it quite open and rolled into the ſhop. Thoſe on horſeback could not follow him, as the entrance

entrance was neither wide nor high enough, and beſides, they did their work like cowards.

It muſt be owned for truth, that God ſhewed great favour to the conſtable: if he had not exactly fallen againſt the hatch, or if it had been cloſed, he would infallibly have loſt his life, and have been trampled to death by the horſes, for they were afraid to diſmount. Several of them imagined, even ſir Peter de Craon and the perſon who had hit him, that the blow on his head which unhorſed him muſt cauſe his death: ſir Peter, therefore, ſaid,—'Come, let us away: we have done enough: if he be not dead, he can never recover from the laſt blow, which was given by a luſty arm.' On ſaying this, they collected together and left the place at a good trot, and were ſoon at the gate of Saint Anthony, which they paſſed, and gained the fields; for ſince the battle of Roſebecque, ten years ago, the gates were never ſhut. The Pariſians had then their mallets taken from them by the conſtable, and many of the citizens puniſhed and fined for their imprudent conduct, as I have fully narrated.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS HIS OWN PHYSICIANS AND SURGEONS TO VISIT THE CONSTABLE DURING THE NIGHT.—HE ORDERS THE PROVOST OF PARIS TO PURSUE SIR PETER DE CRAON, WHO HAD FLED FOR REFUGE TO THE DUKE OF BRITTANY,—SOME OF HIS MEN, HAVING REMAINED AT PARIS, ARE EXECUTED.

THUS was ſir Oliver de Cliſſon left for dead at the baker's, who was much frightened when he learnt it was the conſtable. Sir Oliver's attendants, who had been little hurt, for ſir Peter de Craon's men were only bent on killing their maſter, collected together as well as they could, and, diſmounting before the baker's door, entered the ſhop, where they found their lord ſeverely wounded on the head, and his face covered with blood. They were, as may be ſuppoſed, greatly affected, and with tears and groans bewailed his loſs, for at the firſt moment they thought he was a dead man.

News of this was carried to the king at the hôtel de Saint Pol, juſt as he was going into bed. In much alarm, they ſaid, 'Ah, ſire! we dare not conceal from you a ſhocking event that has juſt happened in Paris.' 'What event?' aſked the king. 'Your conſtable, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, is murdered.' 'Murdered!' repeated the king. 'How?

'How? and who has done it?' 'Sire, that we do not know; but this misfortune has befallen him hard by, in the great ſtreet of St. Catherine.' 'Come, quickly light torches, for I will go and ſee him,' replied the king.

The torches being ready, the varlets bore them before; and the king threw only a cloak over him, while the ſhoes were putting on his feet. The men at arms and uſhers of the guard of the palace eſcorted him.

Thoſe who were gone to bed, on hearing what had paſſed, inſtantly dreſſed themſelves to follow the king, who had left the hôtel de Saint Pol in ſuch haſte that ſir Walter Martel and ſir John de Lignac were the only chamberlains that attended him, for he would not wait for others, and thus he walked at a good pace with torches before and behind him.

In this manner he arrived at the baker's ſhop, which he entered; but the chamberlains, with many torches, ſtaid without.

The king found his conſtable nearly in the ſtate he had heard him to be in, except that he was not dead; for his ſervants had ſtript him to ſee if he had received many wounds, and where they had been given. The firſt words the king ſaid, were, 'Conſtable, how fares it with you?' 'Dear ſire,' replied he, 'but ſo ſo, and very weak.' 'And who has put you in this ſtate?' 'Sire, Peter de Craon and his accomplices have traitorouſly, and without the ſmalleſt ſuſpicion, attacked me.' 'Conſtable,' ſaid the king, 'nothing ſhall ever

be more ſeverely puniſhed than this crime, nor can any ſufferings make amends for it: run quickly,' added the king, 'for doctors and ſurgeons.' Theſe were before ſent for; and they arrived from all quarters, particularly thoſe attached to the king's perſon. On their arrival, the king was well pleaſed, and ſaid,—'Attend well to my conſtable, and tell me what ſtate he is in; for I am ſorely grieved at his misfortune.'

The doctors, having declared they would, examined him all over, the king being preſent, who was greatly angered at this event: he aſked, 'if there were any danger of death?' The doctors unanimouſly replied,—'Sire, certainly not; and, within fifteen days, we will reſtore him to you well enough to ride on horſeback.'

This anſwer pleaſed the king, who ſaid, 'God be praiſed, this is excellent news.' Then, addreſſing himſelf to the conſtable, added; 'Take care of yourſelf, and do not think of this or other buſineſs: no crime ſhall be more rigorouſly puniſhed than that of theſe traitors: they ſhall pay for it as if it were done to myſelf.' The conſtable faintly anſwered, 'May God repay you all, and for your kindneſs in this viſit.'

On this, the king took leave and returned to his palace, and ſent for the provoſt of Paris, who made no long delay before he arrived, for it was now quite day. When the provoſt entered, the king ſaid,—'Take with you a body of armed men, and purſue that traitor, Peter de Craon, who has treacherouſly aſſaſſinated, and nearly murdered, our conſtable.

conſtable. You cannot do us a more agreeable ſervice than to take him and bring him before us.' The provoſt replied; 'Sire, I will do every thing in my power; but what road do you ſuppoſe he may have taken?' 'Inquire, and make good diligence,' ſaid the king. At that time, the four principal gates of Paris were always open night and day: this regulation had been obſerved from the time the king returned from Flanders, after defeating the Flemings at the battle of Roſebecque, and when the Pariſians, ſhewing ſymptoms of rebellion, had their mallets taken from them. In order the more eaſily to chaſtiſe the Pariſians, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon had adviſed the chains to be taken from acroſs the ſtreets, and the gates off their hinges, which had been done; and the gates had been, for theſe laſt ten years, lying againſt the walls, ſo that any one might enter, or go out of Paris, at all hours. Now, obſerve how the ſeaſons repay, ſir Oliver reaped what he had ſown himſelf: had the gates and chains remained, ſir Peter de Craon would not have dared to commit this outrage, for he could never have got out of Paris, but, knowing he could ſet off at any hour, he was encouraged thus to diſgrace himſelf. When he left the conſtable, he concluded he was dead, or at leaſt that he would never recover; but it was not ſo, as you have heard, to his great mortification. He quitted Paris by St. Anthony's gate, about one o'clock in the morning, and, as ſome ſay, croſſed the Seine at the bridge of Charenton, and continued his road to Chartres; but, according to

others, after going out of Paris, he returned by the gate of St. Honoré, under Montmartre, and croſſed the Seine at Ponthon*. Whichever way he paſſed the river, he arrived at Chartres at eight o'clock in the morning, with ſome of the beſt mounted of his accomplices. All did not follow, but took different routes, and in ſmall companies, to avoid being taken in the purſuit.

On his way to Paris, he had ordered twenty horſes to be in waiting for him, at the houſe of a canon, who was his friend, and had ſerved him; but it would have been better for him never to have known him, although the canon was ignorant of the crime he had committed. Sir Peter de Craon, on his arrival at Chartres, drank ſome wine and changed horſes, and then inſtantly departed, taking the road for Maine. He continued his journey, until he came to a ſtrong caſtle he ſtill poſſeſſed, called Sablé, where he ſtopped and refreſhed himſelf, and ſaid he would not go further, but wait there until he heard ſome intelligence of the conſtable.

On the Friday, the day following this aſſaſſination, it was all the news of Paris, and every one greatly blamed ſir Peter de Craon. The lord de Coucy was no ſooner informed of it, than he mounted his horſe, attended by only ſeven perſons, and rode to the conſtable's hôtel, behind the Temple, whither he had been carried; for they mutually loved each other, ſtiling themſelves bro-

* Ponthon. Q. Pontoiſe.

thers

thers and companions in arms. This interview with the lord de Coucy was of ſervice to the conſtable; and he was viſited by all the other lords of the court.

The duke of Touraine accompanied the king in his next viſit: the two brothers were very wroth, and ſaid ſir Peter de Craon had committed this crime in ſpite of them; and that it was a plot formed by traitors to throw the kingdom into confuſion. The duke of Berry, who was at the time in Paris, diſſembled his ſentiments, and ſeemed to make light of what had paſſed. I, the author of this hiſtory, was then informed, that, if he had pleaſed, this accident would not have happened, for it was in his power to have prevented it, and I will tell you how.

The day of the feaſt of the holy ſacrament, a clerk, who was one of the familiars of ſir Peter de Craon, came to the duke of Berry, and ſaid; 'My lord, I would willingly open my mind to you, reſpecting ſome improper conduct that is going forward, which is illegal, and may end unfortunately, for you are more able than any other to put a ſtop to it.' 'What is it?' aſked the duke. 'My lord, I muſt firſt inſiſt that you promiſe my name ſhall never be brought into queſtion; for, to prevent great miſchief being done, and the peril that may enſue in the matter, I am come to diſcover the whole to you.' 'Speak out then, boldly,' replied the duke: 'I will bear you through it.'

'My lord,' ſaid the clerk, 'I very much ſuſpect

pect that ſir Peter de Craon intends murdering the conſtable; for he has collected, within his hôtel, in the church-yard of St. John, a number of companions, whom he has ſecretly kept there, ever ſince Whitſuntide. Should he accompliſh his purpoſe, the king will be exceedingly vexed, and confuſion enſue to the kingdom. It is for this I diſcloſe it to you, my lord; for, although I am ſecretary to my lord of Craon, and have ſworn fidelity to him, I cannot ſuffer ſuch an outrage to be committed. If you do not take meaſures to prevent this, none other will, at this moment, and I beg you will remember what I have now told you, at a proper opportunity; for, ſince I find ſir Peter de Craon is determined to perſevere in this buſineſs, I muſt fly, and never again return to his ſervice.'

The duke of Berry perfectly well comprehended all the clerk had told. He ſaid to him; 'Remain with me to-day, and to-morrow morning I will inform my lord of this plot. It is now too late, and I wiſh not to trouble the king on ſuch a day as this, but, to-morrow, I will not fail doing it; and we will provide a remedy, ſince ſir Peter de Craon is in the town, which I was ignorant of.' Thus, by the delay and negligence of the duke of Berry, did the miſchief happen, as I have related.

The provoſt of Paris, with upwards of ſixty horſe, iſſued out at the gate of St. Honoré, on the traces of ſir Peter de Craon. When he came to Pontoiſe, to croſs the Seine, he aſked the bridge-

bridge-keeper, if any one had paſſed that morning? He anſwered, 'Yes, my lord, a company of about twelve horſemen; but I did not ſee any knight or perſon whom I knew.' 'And what road did they take?' demanded the provoſt. 'That leading to Vannes,' ſaid the bridge-maſter. 'Ah,' replied the provoſt, 'it may very probably be they, who are making for Cherbourg.' He then quitted the road to Chartres, following that to Cherbourg, and thus loſt all traces of them. When they had rode on the road to Vannes till it was dinner-time, they met a knight of that country hare-hunting; and, making inquiry from him, he ſaid, that he had ſeen in the morning about fifteen horſemen riding over the fields; and he thought they were going to Chartres. Upon this, the provoſt again changed his road, and, arriving in the evening at Chartres, learnt that ſir Peter de Craon had been at the canon's houſe about eight o'clock, where he had diſarmed himſelf and changed horſes. He now ſaw that all further purſuit would be vain, as ſir Peter had got ſo much before him, and returned to Paris on the Saturday.

The king of France and the duke of Touraine were very anxious to lay hands on ſir Peter de Craon; and, as it was unceſtain what road he had taken, they ordered ſir John le Barrois, with ſixty horſe, after him by the gate of Saint Anthony. Sir John croſſed the Seine and Marne at the bridge of Charenton, and ſcoured the whole country as far as Eſtampes. On Saturday he arrived

ived to dinner at Chartres. where he heard the truth of his eſcape, and concluded it would be fruitleſs to follow him, as he muſt be at too great a diſtance. He returned to Paris on the Sunday, and related to the king the country he had been over, with the ſame ill ſucceſs as the provoſt had before complained of.

On the Saturday-morning, the officers of juſtice, who had been ſearching all the villages round Paris, diſcovered, in a hamlet ſeven leagues from Paris, two men at arms, ſquires to ſir Peter de Craon, and his page, who had ſtopped in this village from inability or unwillingneſs to proceed farther. They were arreſted by the officers, brought back to Paris, and executed on the Monday following. They were, however, firſt led to the place where the crime had been committed, and each had his hand cut off at the wriſt: they were then beheaded in the market-place, and their bodies hung on a gibbet.

On the Wedneſday following, ſir Peter's houſe-ſteward was executed; but many ſaid, this was unjuſtly done, while others replied, that he ſuffered for not having revealed the arrival of ſir Peter de Craon at Paris. The canon of Chartres, at whoſe houſe ſir Peter had ſtopped to refreſh himſelf and change horſes, was arreſted and confined in the biſhop's priſon. Every thing he poſſeſſed was confiſcated, and himſelf condemned to perpetual impriſonment on bread and water: no excuſes he could plead for his innocence in this matter were of the ſmalleſt avail, though he

bore

bore in Chartres the character of an honeſt prudent man.

Sir Peter de Craon was exceedingly vexed, when he heard for certain, at his caſtle of Sablé, whither he had retired, that the conſtable was not dead, and had not received any wounds that, in ſix weeks time, could prevent him mounting his horſe. He conſidered that he would not be ſafe in this caſtle when it ſhould be known where he was, and that he would be too cloſely ſurrounded to quit it when he pleaſed. He, in conſequence, gave the charge of it to ſome of his people, and left it ſecretly, taking the road towards Brittany, where he arrived without ſtopping, and found the duke at Suſmet*.

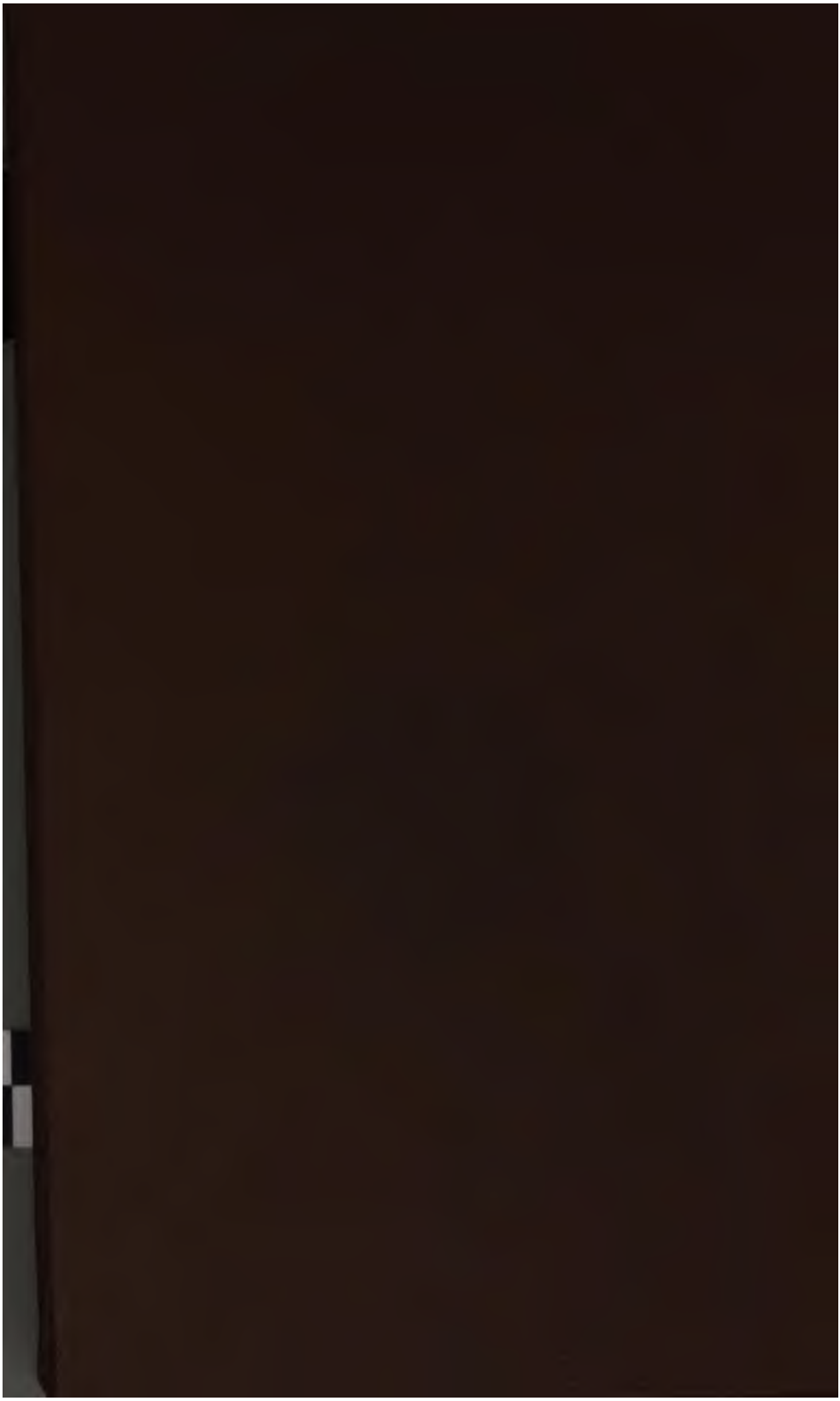
The duke, who had already heard the iſſue of the aſſaſſination, and that the conſtable was not dead, ſaid, on receiving ſir Peter de Craon, 'You are a poor creature, who cannot ſlay a man when you have him in your power.' 'My lord,' replied Sir Peter, 'it was a damnable buſineſs. I believe all the devils in hell, to whom he belongs, defended him, and preſerved him from mine and my mens blows. There were upwards of ſixty thurſts and cuts made at him with ſwords and cutlaſſes; and when he was knocked off his horſe, in good truth, I thought he was dead; but his good fortune made him fall againſt the hatch of a baker's ſhop, that was half

* Au Suſmet, Q. Succinio, which was a reſidence of the duke of Brittany.

open,

open, by which means he rolled into the ſhop. Had he fallen in the ſtreet, we would have killed him and trampled him under our horſes feet.'

'Well,' ſaid the duke, 'it cannot be otherwiſe at preſent. I am ſure it will not be long before I hear from the king of France, and ſhall incur as much hatred as yourſelf. Keep quiet near me; for I am convinced things will not remain as they now are, but that the king and conſtable will wage a ſerious war againſt me. However, ſince I promiſed you protection, I will keep my word.'

Brooke, Printer,
Paternoſter Row.

NOV 17 1954